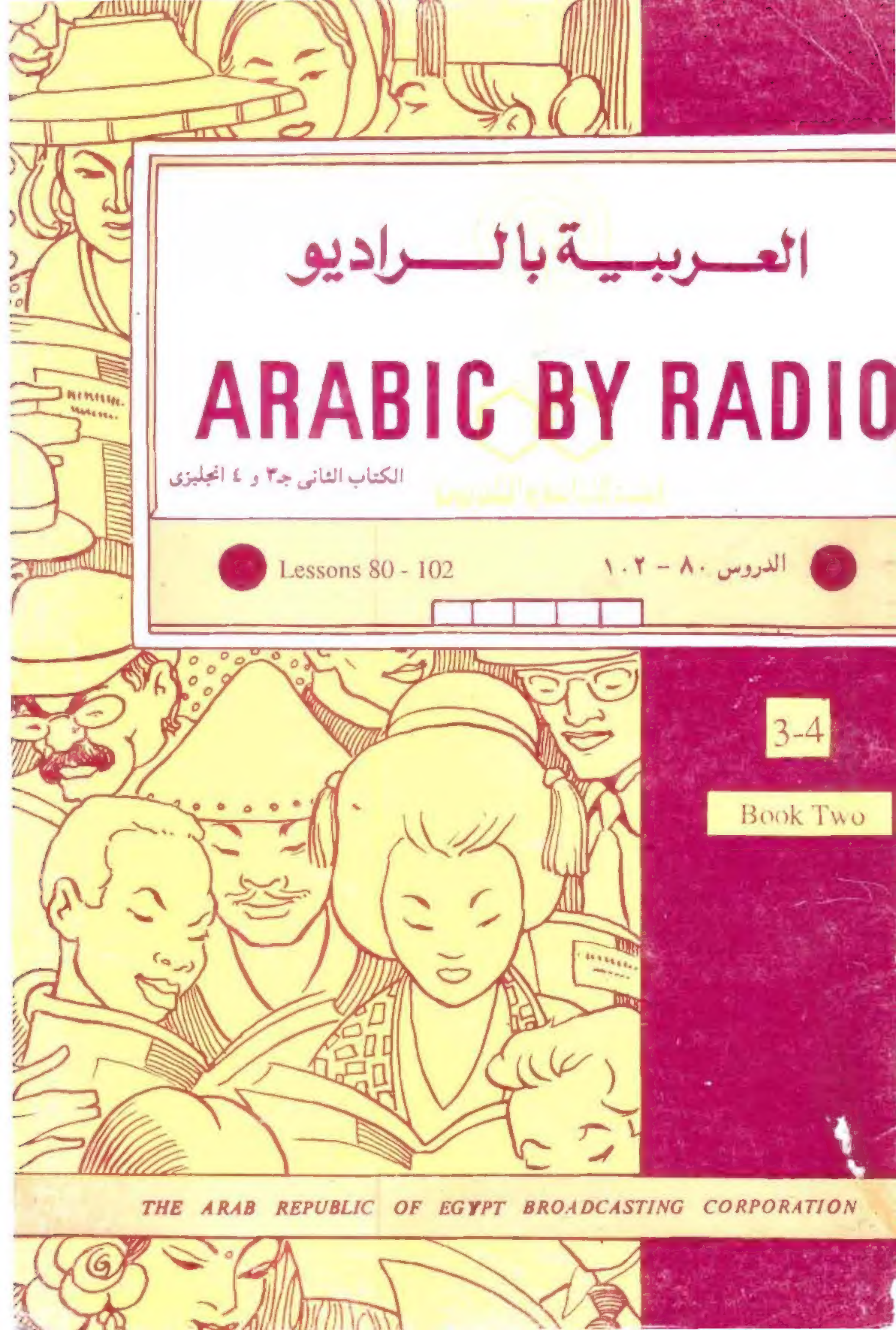


العـــربيـــة بالـــــراديو

ARABIC BY RADIO

الكتاب الثانى جـ٣ و ٤ انجليزى

Lessons 80 - 102

الدروس ٨٠ - ١٠٢

3-4

Book Two

THE ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT BROADCASTING CORPORATION

Copyright reserved by the
***A. R. E.** Broadcasting Corporation*

To obtain a copy of this companion write to :
ARABIC BY RADIO
P. O. Box 325
Cairo, A. R. E.

THE ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT BROADCASTING CORPORATION

اَلْعَــرَبِيَّــةُ بِالــرَّادْيُو

ARABIC BY RADIO

BOOK TWO - PART 3

القَاهِرةُ
Cairo
2004

الكتاب الثانى

الجزء الثالث

فهرس

رقم الدرس	رقم الصفحة	اَلْعُنْوَانُ	اَلْمَوْضُوعُ النَّحْوِىُّ
٨٠	١	المصوِّر	نائب الفاعل
٨١	٧	رحلة صيد	كان وأخواتها
٨٢	١٥	البترول	إن وأخواتها
٨٣	٢٢	الموسيقا	نصب الفعل المضارع
٨٤	٢٩	حضارة العرب	جزم الفعل المضارع
٨٥	٣٦	الجيش	رفع الفعل المضارع
٨٦	٤٠	النحت	مراجعة
٨٧	٤٨	الشِّعر	الأفعال الخمسة
٨٨	٥٥	نهضة المرأة	اتصال نون النسوة بالفعل المضارع
٨٩	٦١	درس وعمل	ضمائر الرفع المتصلة بالفعل الماضى
٩٠	٧٢	فى العمل جهد وصبر	ضمائر الرفع المتصلة بفعل الأمر
٩١	٨٠	نصائح	أدوات الشرط

ألف هذا الكتاب بالعربية :

الأستاذ الدكتور السيد يعقوب بكر
الأستاذ محمد شفيق عطا
الأستاذ السيد محمد العزاوى

الترجمة الإنجليزية:

الدكتور ألبرت جورجى عبد الله

الرسوم بريشة الفنان محمد قطب

Arabic Original by:

Professor Dr. El-Sayed Yacoub Bakr
Ustaz Muhammad Shafik ᶜAta
Ustaz El-Sayed Muhammad El-ᶜAzzawy

English Translation by:

Dr. Albert G. Abdallah

Illustrations by:

Muhammad Kotb

Area	G.M.T	Local Time	Short Wave Lengths	REMARKS
1 - South & South East Asia	13.10		S. W. L.	Lessons are broadcast as follows :
Pakistan		18.10	16 Ms	First Stage : on Sundays
Bangladesh		19.10	or 17595	and Tuesdays
Sri Lanka		18.40	KH/Z	Second Stage : On Mondays
India Standard Time		18.40		
Singapore & Malaysia		21.10		*and* Wednesdays
Philippines		21.10		Third Stage : On Thursdays
2 - East Central & South Africa	18.07		S.W.L.	
			19.Ms	and Saturdays
Central & South Africa		20.07	or 15255	A *fifteen-minute* programme
East Africa		21.07	KH/Z	is broadcast on Fridays
3 - Nigeria & West Africa	21.00		S.W.L	replying listeners'
			19 Ms	questions and queries and
Ghana & Sierra Leone		21.00	or 15375	commenting on their
Nigeria		22.00	KH/Z	letters.

Dear Listener

You are kindly requested, as a registered member of our course « Arabic by Radio»' to adhere to the following instructions : —

1 - You have to quote down your file number in all your future correspondence with us

2 - If you change your permanent address, you are urged to let us know your new address as soon as possible in order to ensure delivery of our letters and publications to you .

3 - Answering the test papers is absolutely essential in order to continue the Course. Hence you have to answer the questions in the test papers sent to you for each stage & send them back in due time i. e two months after the completion of the lessons of each stage on air .

Those who fail to send back their test papers duly completed to our office in due time will be dropped from the list of our registered members thus terminating their membership. However those who are unable to answer the test paper must inform us of their difficulties before expiry of the deadline for accepting the test papers concerned. Learning can surely be achieved through trial and error.

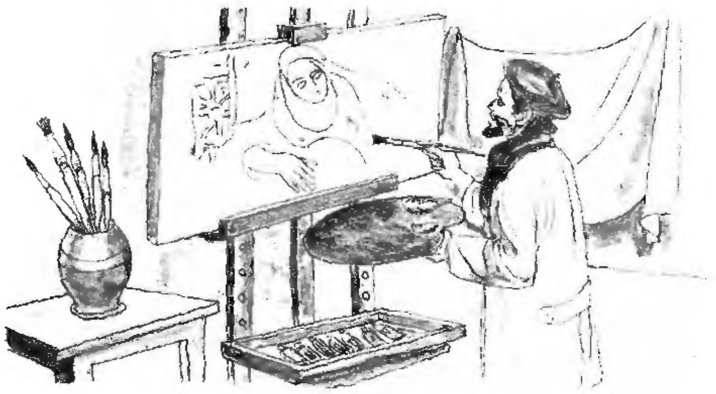
BOOK TWO - PART THREE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Lesson Number	*Page Number*	*Title*	*Grammatical Subject*
80	1	*The Painter*	The substitute of the subject
81	6	*A Fishing Trip*	كَانَ and its « sisters »
82	15	*Petroleum*	إنَّ and its «sisters»
83	22	*Music*	The imperfect in the subjunctive mood
84	29	*The Civilization of the Arabs*	The imperfect in the jussive mood
85	36	*The Army*	The imperfect in the indicative mood
86	40	*Sculpture*	Revision
87	48	*Poetry*	The « five verbs »
88	55	*The Rise of Women*	The نْ of the feminine plural suffixed to the imperfect
89	61	*Study and Work*	Nominative pronominal suffixes of the perfect
90	72	*There is Effort and Patience in Work*	Nominative pronominal suffixes of the imperative
91	80	*Bits of Advice*	Particles of condition

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty



اَلْمُصَوِّرُ

The Painter

أَحْضَرَ الْمُصَوِّرُ الْحَامِلَ . وَضَعَ الْمُصَوِّرُ اللَّوْحَةَ عَلَى الْحَامِلِ .

The painter brought the easel. The painter put the canvas (the board) on the easel.

أَحْضَرَ الْمُصَوِّرُ الْفُرْشَةَ وَالْأَلْوَانَ .

The painter brought the brush and the colours.

اَلْمُصَوِّرُ مُسْتَعِدٌّ . أُحْضِرَ الْحَامِلُ ، وَوُضِعَتِ اللَّوْحَةُ عَلَيْهِ ، وَأُحْضِرَتِ الْفُرْشَةُ وَالْأَلْوَانُ .

The painter is ready. The easel was brought, the board was put on it, and the brush and colours were brought.

اَلْفُرْشَةُ أَدَاةُ الْمُصَوِّرِ . تُسْتَعْمَلُ الْفُرْشَةُ فِي التَّصْوِيرِ .

The brush is the instrument of the painter.
The brush is used in painting.

وَزَّعَ الْمُصَوِّرُ الْأَلْوَانَ بِالْفُرْشَةِ . وُزِّعَتِ الْأَلْوَانُ عَلَى اللَّوْحَةِ بِالْفُرْشَةِ .

The painter applied the colours with the brush.
The colours were applied to the board with the brush.

يَرْسُمُ الْمُصَوِّرُ مَنْظَراً بَهِيجاً . وَلِهَذَا يَسْتَعْمِلُ أَلْوَاناً زَاهِيَةً .

The painter is painting a joyful scene. And so he is using bright colours.

عِنْدَمَا يُرْسَمُ مَنْظَرٌ بَهِيجٌ تُسْتَعْمَلُ أَلْوَانٌ زَاهِيَةٌ .

When a joyful scene is painted, bright colours are used.

وَعِنْدَمَا يُرْسَمُ مَنْظَرٌ حَزِينٌ تُسْتَعْمَلُ أَلْوَانٌ مُعْتِمَةٌ .

When a sad scene is painted, dim colours are used.

تُمَثِّلُ الْأَلْوَانُ الْفَرَحَ أَوِ الْحُزْنَ . يُمَثَّلُ الْفَرَحُ بِاللَّوْنِ الزَّاهِي .
وَيُمَثَّلُ الْحُزْنُ بِاللَّوْنِ الْمُعْتِمِ .

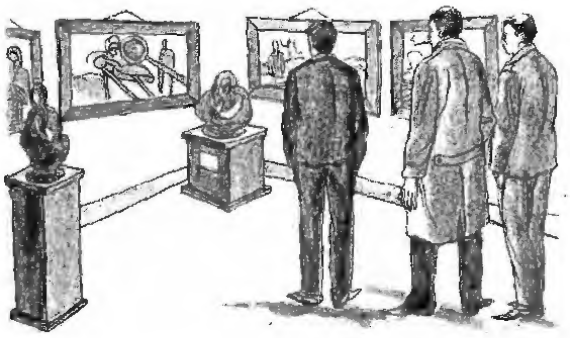
The colours represent joy or grief. Joy is represented by a bright colour. Grief is represented by a dim colour.

فِي الْقَاهِرَةِ مَعَارِضُ لِلصُّوَرِ ، تَعْرِضُ إِنْتَاجَ الْمُصَوِّرِينَ .

In Cairo there are painting exhibitions which display the works of painters.

يُعْرَضُ فِيهَا إِنْتَاجُ الْمُصَوِّرِينَ الْكِبَارِ وَالْمُصَوِّرِينَ النَّاشِئِينَ .

The works of senior and junior painters are exhibited there.



يُقَدَّرُ الْمُصَوِّرُونَ الْكِبارُ ، وَيُشَجَّعُ النَّاشِئُونَ .

The senior painters are appreciated and the juniors are encouraged.

تُكَافَئُ الدَّوْلَةُ الْفَنَّانِينَ عَلَى جُهُودِهِمْ .

The State rewards the artists for their efforts.

تُنَظَّمُ لَهُمُ الْمَعَارِضُ ، وَيُمْنَحُ الْمُتَفَوِّقُونَ مِنْهُمْ مِنَحَ التَّفَرُّغِ .

Exhibitions are organised for them and the excellent ones among them are given « full - occupation » grants.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. أَحْضَرَ الْمُصَوِّرُ الْحَامِلَ . أُحْضِرَ الْحَامِلُ .

The first sentence is verbal. It consists of a past-tense verb (أَحْضَرَ), a subject (اَلْمُصَوِّرُ), and a direct object (اَلْحَامِلَ).

The second sentence is also verbal, but the subject is omitted and the direct object replaces it; (اَلْحَامِلُ) is therefore called the substitute of the subject (نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ) and its verb (أُحْضِرَ) is called passive (اَلْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ).

Note that the past-tense verb changes its form when it is used in the passive voice. In the first sentence the verb is (أَحْضَرَ), but in the second it is (أُحْضِرَ) where the initial consonant (اَلْهَمْزَةُ) is pronounced with (اَلضَّمَّةُ) and the penultimate (the last but one) (اَلضَّادُ) is pronounced with (اَلْكَسْرَةُ).

The substitute of the subject is always in the nominative case which is here indictated by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) since the noun (اَلْحَامِلُ) is singular.

2. يَرْسُمُ الْمُصَوِّرُ مَنْظَراً . يُرْسَمُ مَنْظَرٌ .

The first sentence is verbal. It consists of a present-tense verb (يَرْسُمُ) , a subject (الْمُصَوِّرُ) , and a direct object (مَنْظَراً) .

The second sentence consists of a passive present-tense verb (يُرْسَمُ) and a substitute of the subject (مَنْظَرٌ) .

Note the form of the passive *present-tense verb:* the initial consonant (الْيَاءُ) is pronounced with (الضَّمَّةُ) and the penultimate (السِّينُ) is pronounced with (الْفَتْحَةُ) .

The subject substitute (مَنْظَرٌ) is in the nominative case indicated here by (الضَّمَّةُ) since it is singular.

3. تُقَدِّرُ الدَّوْلَةُ الْمُصَوِّرِينَ . يُقَدَّرُ الْمُصَوِّرُونَ .

The substitute of the subject in the *second sentence* (الْمُصَوِّرُونَ) is in the nominative case indicated here by (الْوَاوُ) since it is a sound masculine plural.

4. عَرَضَ الْمُصَوِّرُ صُورَتَيْنِ. عُرِضَتْ صُورَتَانِ .

In the second sentence the subject substitute (صُورَتَانِ) is in the nominative case indicated here by (الْأَلِفُ) since it is a dual. Note that the passive verb (عُرِضَتْ) ends with the feminine ending (تْ) because the substitute of the subject is *feminine.*

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Fill in the blanks with suitable substitutes of the subject, marking the signs of the *nominative* case:

ا – وُضِعَتْ . . . . . عَلَى الْحَامِلِ .

ب – وُزِّعَتْ . . . . . عَلَى اللَّوْحَةِ بِالْفُرْشَةِ .

جـ – يُرْسَمُ . . . . . بَهِيجٌ ، فَتُسْتَعْمَلُ . . . . . زَاهِيَةٌ .

د – يُمَثَّلُ . . . . . بِاللَّوْنِ الزَّاهِي ، وَيُمَثَّلُ . . . . . بِاللَّوْنِ الْمُعْتِمِ .

2. Fill in the blanks with suitable passive verbs:

ا – . . . . . الْمَعَارِضُ لِلْمُصَوِّرِينَ .

ب – . . . . . الْمُتَفَوِّقُونَ مِنَ الْفَنَّانِينَ مِنَحَ التَّفَرُّغِ .

جـ – . . . . . إِنْتَاجُ الْمُصَوِّرِينَ فِي الْمَعَارِضِ .

د – . . . . . مَنْظَرٌ حَزِينٌ ، فَـ . . . . . أَلْوَانٌ مُعْتِمَةٌ .

3. Put the past-tense verbs in the following sentences into the passive. Make any necessary changes.
(Revise lesson 26)

ا – قَرَأَ نَبِيلٌ أَرْقَامَ التِّلِيفُونِ .

ب – رَفَعَ السَّمَّاعَةَ .

جـ – دَوَّرَ الْقُرْصَ .

د – سَمِعَ صَوْتَ الْجَرَسِ .

4. Put the present-tense verbs in the following sentences into the passive. Make any necessary changes.
(Revise Lesson 26)

ا – يَقْرَأُ نَبِيلٌ أَرْقَامَ التِّلِيفُونِ .

ب – يَرْفَعُ السَّمَّاعَةَ .

جـ – يُدَوِّرُ الْقُرْصَ .

د – يَسْمَعُ صَوْتَ الْجَرَسِ .

5. Underline the substitute of the subject in each of the following sentences indicating the sign of the nominative case:

ا – تُحْمَلُ الْحَقَائِبُ الصَّغِيرَةُ .

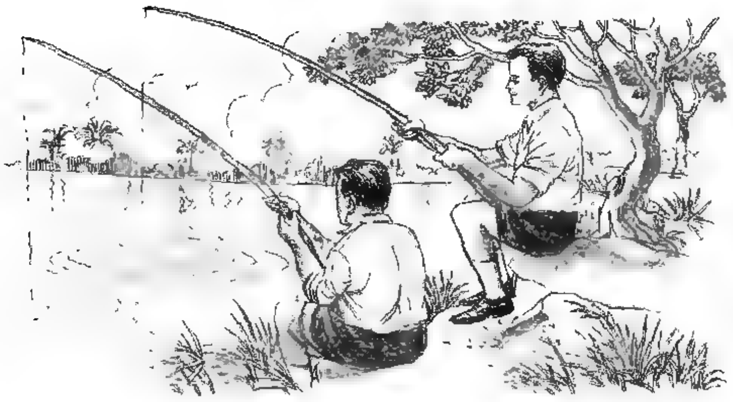
ب – أُخْرِجَتِ الْبَقَرَاتُ مِنَ الْحَظِيرَةِ .

جـ – يُشَاهَدُ الْمُمَثِّلُونَ عَلَى الْمَسْرَحِ .

د – يُحَبُّ الْمُؤَدَّبُونَ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الْحَادِي وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-One



رِحْلَةُ صَيْدٍ

A Fishing Trip

كَانَ الْجَوُّ صَحْواً ، وَكَانَتِ الشَّمْسُ مُشْرِقَةً .

The weather was bright and the sun was shining.

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ : لِمَاذَا لَا أَصْطَادُ الْيَوْمَ ؟

Nabil said, " Why don't I go fishing today ?

سَأَذْهَبُ إِلَى صَدِيقِي عَادِلٍ .

I will go to my friend Adel. "

أَخَذَ نَبِيلٌ الصِّنَارَةَ وَالطُّعْمَ . وَذَهَبَ إِلَى عَادِلٍ .

Nabil took the fishing rod and the bait and went to Adel.

– هَلْ تُحِبُّ أَنْ تَأْتِيَ مَعِي ؟

Would you like to come with me ?

– نَعَمْ ، أَيْنَ نَصْطَادُ الْيَوْمَ ؟

Yes. Where do we go fishing today ?

– أَعْرِفُ تُرْعَةً كَثِيرَةَ السَّمَكِ .

I know of a canal which has plenty of fish.

– هَلْ هِيَ بَعِيدَةٌ عَنْ قَرْيَتِنَا ؟

Is it far from our village ?

– لَا ، لَيْسَتِ التُّرْعَةُ بَعِيدَةً .

No, the canal is not far.

أَحْضَرَ عَادِلٌ صِنَارَتَهُ ، وَخَرَجَ مَعَ نَبِيلٍ .

Adel brought his fishing rod and went out with Nabil.

كَانَ الصَّدِيقَانِ مَسْرُورَيْنِ .

The two friends were pleased.

وَصَلَ الصَّدِيقَانِ إِلَى التُّرْعَةِ .

The two friends arrived at the canal.

جَلَسَ نَبِيلٌ فِي ظِلِّ شَجَرَةٍ ، وَجَلَسَ عَادِلٌ قَرِيباً مِنْهُ .

Nabil sat in the shade of a tree.
Adel sat near him.

رَمَى نَبِيلٌ صِنَارَتَهُ ، فَكَانَ حَظُّهُ سَعِيداً .

Nabil cast his fishing rod; he was lucky.

اصْطَادَ نَبِيلٌ سَمَكَةً ، فَثَانِيَةً ، فَثَالِثَةً .

Nabil caught a fish, then a second, and then a third.

كَانَ عَادِلٌ سَيِّئَ الْحَظِّ . فَقَالَ لَهُ نَبِيلٌ :

Adel was unlucky. Nabil said to him,

غَيِّرْ مَكَانَكَ ، تَعَالَ تَحْتَ هَذِهِ الشَّجَرَةِ .

" Change your place; come (and sit) under this tree. "

أَلْقَى عَادِلٌ الصِّنَارَةَ ، فَكَانَ حَظُّهُ سَعِيداً .

Adel cast his fishing rod: he was lucky.

صَادَ سَمَكَةً ، فَثَانِيَةً ، فَثَالِثَةً .

He caught a fish, then a second, and then a third.

قَالَ عَادِلٌ لِنَبِيلٍ :

Adel said to Nabil,

صَارَ السَّمَكُ كَثِيراً .

" We have now plenty of fish. "

ظَلَّ الصَّدِيقَانِ جَالِسَيْنِ حَتَّى انْتَصَفَ النَّهَارُ .

The two friends remained sitting until noon.

قَالَ عَادِلٌ :

Adel said,

صَارَتِ الشَّمْسُ مُحْرِقَةً . هَلْ نَرْجِعُ الآنَ إِلَى بَيْتِنَا ؟

" The sun has become scorching. Shall we go back home now ? "

أَجَابَ نَبِيلٌ :

Nabil answered,

نَعَمْ ، فَقَدِ اصْطَدْنَا سَمَكاً كَثِيراً .

" Yes. We have caught a lot of fish. "

قَالَ عَادِلٌ :

Adel said,

كَانَ الصَّيْدُ مُوَفَّقاً .

" It was a lucky fishing (trip) . "

فَقَالَ نَبِيلٌ :

Nabil said,

وَسَيَكُونُ الْغِذَاءُ شَهِيًّا .

" And food will be delicious. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

اَلْمُلاَحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1 - اَلْجَوُّ صَحْوٌ . كَانَ الْجَوُّ صَحْواً .

The first sentence is nominal. It consists of a subject and a predicate, both of which are in the nominative case.

Note that the second sentence consists of the same subject and predicate but begins with (كَانَ). This verb has changed the case of the predicate from the nominative (صَحْوٌ) to the accusative (صَحْواً) .

Note that the accusative case is indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) since the predicate is singular.

2 - اَلشَّمْسُ مُشْرِقَةٌ . كَانَتِ الشَّمْسُ مُشْرِقَةً .

The first sentence consists of a subject and a predicate. The second sentence consists of the same subject and predicate but begins with (كَانَ) which has made the predicate accusative.

Note that the feminine ending (اَلتَّاءُ) is suffixed to (كَانَ) because the subject (اَلشَّمْسُ) is feminine.

3 - اَلتُّرْعَةُ بَعِيدَةٌ . لَيْسَتِ التُّرْعَةُ بَعِيدَةً .

The first sentence is nominal. It consists of a subject and a predicate, both of which are in the nominative case. The second sentence consists of the same subject and predicate but begins with the verb (لَيْسَ) which has made the predicate accusative.

Note that the feminine ending (اَلتَّاءُ) is suffixed to the verb (لَيْسَ) because the subject (اَلتُّرْعَةُ) is feminine . Note also that (لَيْسَ) expresses negation.

4 - اَلسَّمَكُ كَثِيرٌ . صَارَ السَّمَكُ كَثِيرًا .

The first sentence consists of a subject and a predicate, both of which are in the *nominative* case. The second sentence consists of the same subject and predicate but begins with the verb (صَارَ) which has made the predicate accusative.

Thus (صَارَ) functions in *exactly* the same way as (كَانَ) and (لَيْسَ).

Note that the feminine ending (التَّاءُ) is not suffixed to (صَارَ) because the subject is masculine.

Note that (صَارَ) expresses change

5 - ظَلَّ الصَّدِيقَانِ جَالِسَيْنِ .

In this sentence the verb (ظَلَّ) also makes the predicate accusative. The accusative case is indicated here by (اليَاءُ) since the predicate (جَالِسَيْنِ) is dual.

6 - The *following* verbs function in exactly the same way as

كَانَ ، لَيْسَ ، صَارَ ، ظَلَّ .

أَصْبَحَ : *it* expresses timing in the morning.

أَضْحَى : it expresses timing in the *late morning.*

أَمْسَى : it expresses timing in the evening.

بَاتَ : it expresses *timing* at night.

7. The present form of these verbs, except (لَيْسَ) which has no present form, functions as the past form, e.g. سَيَكُونُ الْغِذَاءُ شَهِيًّا

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Begin each of the following sentences with (كَانَ) indicating the case ending of the predicate:

ا – اَلْفَاكِهَةُ لَذِيذَةٌ .

ب – اَلصَّوْتُ مُرْتَفِعٌ .

ج – اَلْقِطَارُ سَرِيعٌ .

د – اَلْبَابُ مَفْتُوحٌ .

هـ – اَلسَّيَّارَةُ جَدِيدَةٌ .

2. Begin each of the following sentences with (لَيْسَ) indicating the case endings of the subject and the predicate:

ا – اَلشُّبَّاكُ مَفْتُوحٌ .

ب – اَلْحُجْرَةُ وَاسِعَةٌ .

ج – اَلْمَائِدَةُ مُنَظَّمَةٌ .

د – اَلسَّمَاءُ صَافِيَةٌ .

3. Fill in the blanks with suitable predicates:

ا – كَانَ الصَّدِيقَانِ . . . . . ، وَكَانَ حَظُّهُمَا . . . . .

ب – كَانَ عَادِلٌ . . . . . الْحَظِّ .

ج – سَيَكُونُ الْغِذَاءُ . . . . .

د – صَارَتِ الشَّمْسُ . . . . .

4. Answer the following sentences using (لَيْسَ) .

Follow the example given in the first sentence.

ا – هَلِ الدَّرَّاجَةُ سَرِيعَةٌ ؟   لَا ، لَيْسَتِ الدَّرَّاجَةُ سَرِيعَةً .

ب – هَلِ الشَّارِعُ وَاسِعٌ ؟

ح – هَلِ الشُّرْطِيُّ نَائِمٌ ؟

د – هَلِ الْجَامِعُ بَعِيدٌ ؟

هـ – هَلِ الْوَالِدُ مُسَافِرٌ ؟

إِنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ الذَّهَبُ الْأَسْوَدُ .

Petroleum is the black gold.

أَنْتَ تَعْلَمُ أَنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ وَقُودٌ نَافِعٌ .

You know that petroleum *is a useful fuel.*

تَسِيرُ بِهِ السُّفُنُ والسَّيَّارَاتُ وَالطَّيَّارَاتُ .

Ships, cars and aeroplanes run by it.

وَتَدُورُ بِهِ أَيْضاً آلَاتُ الصِّنَاعَةِ وَالزِّرَاعَةِ .

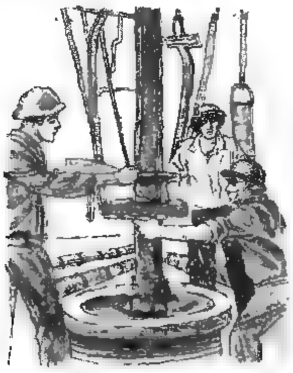
Industrial and agricultural machines are run by it, too.

وَيُسْتَخْدَمُ فِي الْإِضَاءَةِ بِالْقُرَى .

It is used in lighting in the villages.

وَيَدْخُلُ فِي صِنَاعَاتٍ مُتَعَدِّدَةٍ .

It is used in many industries.



تَحْفُرُ الشَّرِكَاتُ الْآبَارَ فِي الْأَمَاكِنِ الْمُخْتَلِفَةِ ،

Companies dig the wells in different places,

لَعَلَّ الْبِتْرُولَ كَامِنٌ فِي بَاطِنِهَا .

hoping that petroleum *may* be latent in them.

وهِيَ تُنْفِقُ فِي ذَلِكَ أَمْوَالًا كَثِيرَةً ،

In this they spend much money,

كَأَنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ الْحَيَاةُ .

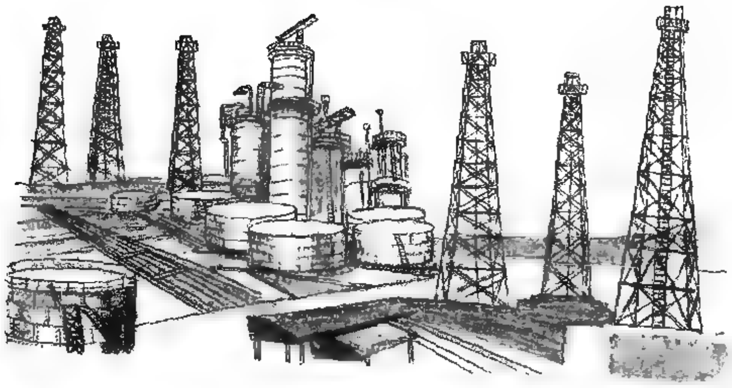
as if petroleum were *life (itself).*

اَلْوَطَنُ الْعَرَبِيُّ غَنِيٌّ بِالْبِتْرُولِ ،

The Arab world is rich in petroleum.

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّانِي وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Two



اَلْبِتْرُولُ

Petroleum

إِنَّ الذَّهَبَ الأَصْفَرَ مَعْدِنٌ نَفِيسٌ ،

Yellow gold is a precious metal.

نَصْنَعُ مِنْهُ الْحُلِيَّ .

We make ornaments from it.

وَالْقُطْنُ ذَهَبٌ أَبْيَضُ ،

Cotton is white gold.

نَصْنَعُ مِنْهُ الْمَلَابِسَ .

We make clothes from it.

فَهَلْ تَعْرِفُ الذَّهَبَ الأَسْوَدَ ؟

Do you know what black gold is ?

وَلَكِنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ وَفِيرٌ فِي بَعْضِ دُوَلِهِ دُونَ بَعْضِهَا الْآخَرِ .

However, petroleum is abundant in some but not in other countries of the Arab world.

فَلَيْتَ الْعَرَبَ مُنْتَفِعُونَ بِهِ انْتِفَاعاً كَامِلاً .

Let us hope that the Arabs may make full use of it.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. إِنَّ الذَّهَبَ مَعْدِنٌ .

This sentence was originally (اَلذَّهَبُ مَعْدِنٌ) , consisting of a subject (اَلذَّهَبُ) in the nominative case indicated by (اَلضَّمَّة) and a predicate (مَعْدِنٌ) in the nominative case also indicated by (اَلضَّمَّة). When the emphatic particle (إِنَّ) begins the nominal sentence, the subject (اَلذَّهَبُ) becomes accusative, but the predicate (مَعْدِنٌ) remains nominative. The accusative case is indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَة) since the subject is singular.

2. أَنْتَ تَعْلَمُ أَنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ وَقُودٌ .

The particle (أَنَّ) begins the nominal sentence (اَلْبِتْرُولُ وَقُودٌ) . The subject (اَلْبِتْرُول) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَة) and the predicate (وَقُودٌ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّة) .

3. لَعَلَّ الْبِتْرُولَ كَامِنٌ .

The particle (لَعَلَّ) begins the nominal sentence (اَلْبِتْرُولُ كَامِنٌ) . The subject (اَلْبِتْرُول) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَة) and the predicate (كَامِنٌ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّة) .

Note that the particle (لَعَلَّ) expresses expectation.

4. كَأَنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ الْحَيَاةُ .

The particle (كَأَنَّ) begins the nominal sentence (اَلْبِتْرُولُ الْحَيَاةُ) . The subject (اَلْبِتْرُول) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَة)

and the predicate (اَلْحَيَاةُ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّةُ).

Note that the particle (كَأَنَّ) expresses similitude (اَلتَّشْبِيهُ).

5. اَلْوَطَنُ الْعَرَبِيُّ غَنِيٌّ بِالْبِتْرُولِ ، وَلَكِنَّ الْبِتْرُولَ وَفِيرٌ فِي بَعْضِ دُوَلِهِ دُونَ بَعْضِهَا .

The particle (لَكِنَّ) begins the nominal sentence (اَلْبِتْرُولُ وَفِيرٌ). The subject (اَلْبِتْرُولُ) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ), and the predicate (وَفِيرٌ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّةُ).

Note that the particle (لَكِنَّ) means « but ».

6. لَيْتَ الْعَرَبَ مُنْتَفِعُونَ بِهِ .

The particle (لَيْتَ) begins the nominal sentence (اَلْعَرَبُ مُنْتَفِعُونَ). The subject (اَلْعَرَبُ) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) and the predicate (مُنْتَفِعُونَ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْوَاوُ) in the ending (ـُونَ).

Note that the particle (لَيْتَ) expresses hope (اَلتَّمَنِّي).

7. إِنَّ أَنَّ لَعَلَّ كَأَنَّ لَكِنَّ لَيْتَ

are particles that begin the nominal sentence for special purposes you have known. These particles make the subject accusative but the predicate remains nominative.

8. If any of these particles begins a nominal sentence consisting of a subject and a predicate both of which are dual, the subject which was originally in the nominative case indicated by (اَلْأَلِفُ) assumes the accusative case indicated

by (اَلْيَاءُ), and the predicate remains in the nominative case indicated by (اَلْأَلِفُ). Examples:

(ا) اَلْبَابَانِ مَفْتُوحَانِ – إِنَّ الْبَابَيْنِ مَفْتُوحَانِ .
(ب) اَلنَّافِذَتَانِ مُغْلَقَتَانِ – لَعَلَّ النَّافِذَتَيْنِ مُغْلَقَتَانِ .

9. If any of these particles begins a *nominal sentence consisting* of a subject and a predicate both of which are sound masculine plurals, the subject which *was originally* in the nominative case indicated by (اَلْوَاوُ) assumes the accusative case indicated by (اَلْيَاءُ), and the predicate remains in the nominative case indicated by (اَلْوَاوُ). *Example:*

اَلْفَلَّاحُونَ نَشِيطُونَ – إِنَّ الْفَلَّاحِينَ نَشِيطُونَ .

10. If any of these particles begins a nominal sentence the subject of which is a sound feminine plural, the subject assumes the accusative case indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ). Example:

اَلْفَلَّاحَاتُ نَشِيطَاتٌ – إِنَّ الْفَلَّاحَاتِ نَشِيطَاتٌ

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Fill in the blanks with particles that make the subject accusative in the following nominal sentences. Indicate the case ending of the subject in each:

ا – اَلسَّيَّارَاتُ سَرِيعَةٌ ..... الْقِطَارَ أَسْرَعُ .

ب – ..... الْقَمَرُ مِصْبَاحٌ مُنِيرٌ .

ج – ..... الدَّوَاءُ مُفِيدٌ .

د – هلْ تَعْلَمُ ..... الْكِتَابَ نَافِعٌ ؟

هـ – ..... الْمَدْرَسَةَ قَرِيبَةٌ .

2. Begin each of the following nominal sentences with (إِنَّ) indicating the case endings of both the subject and the predicate:

ا – اَلْحَقِيبَتَانِ صَغِيرَتَانِ .

ب – اَلْمُهَنْدِسُونَ مَاهِرُونَ .

ج – اَلتِّلْمِيذَانِ مُجْتَهِدَانِ .

د – بَابُ الْحَدِيقَةِ مَفْتُوحٌ .

هـ اَلْبُرْجُ مُرْتَفِعٌ .

3. Omit the particle at the beginning of each of the following nominal sentences. Then indicate the case ending of the subject in each:

ا – كَأَنَّ الطَّائِرَاتِ سُفُنٌ سَابِحَةٌ فِي الْهَوَاءِ .

ب – إِنَّ الْمَشْيَ مُتْعِبٌ وَلَكِنَّ الْجُلُوسَ مُرِيحٌ .

ج – لَعَلَّ الرِّوَايَةَ بَدِيعَةٌ .

د – إِنَّ الْمُمَثِّلَتَيْنِ بَارِعَتَانِ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّالِثُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Three

اَلْمُوسِيقَا

Music

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ لِوَالِدِهِ : أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَتَعَلَّمَ الْمُوسِيقَا .

Nabil said *to his* father, « I want to learn music. "

فَأَجَابَهُ وَالِدُهُ : تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تَتَعَلَّمَ الْمُوسِيقَا ، وَلَكِنَّ الْمُوسِيقَا فَنٌّ جَمِيلٌ ،

His father answered, « *You can learn* music, but music is a beautiful art,

وَالْفَنُّ يَحْتَاجُ إِلَى مَوْهِبَةٍ . لَنْ تَكُونَ فَنَّاناً إِذَا لَمْ تَكُنْ مَوْهُوباً .

and art requires a talent. You will not be an artist if you *are not* talented.

تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى الْمَوْهِبَةِ لِتَكُونَ فَنَّاناً .

You *have to* be gifted in order to be an artist. "

قَال نَبِيلٌ : تَظْهَرُ الْمَوَاهِبُ فِي أَثْنَاءِ التَّعَلُّمِ وَالتَّدَرُّبِ . تَحْتَاجُ الْمَوْهِبَةُ إِلَى زَمَنٍ كَيْ تَظْهَرَ .

Nabil said, " Talents come out during learning and practising. A talent requires time to appear. "

قَال الْوَالِدُ : هَذَا صَحِيحٌ . تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ تُجَرِّبَ نَفْسَكَ ، لِتَعْرِفَ حَقِيقَةَ أَمْرِكَ .

The father said, " That's true. You can try yourself to know the truth about yourself.

وَلَكِنْ مَا الْآلَةُ الْمُوسِيقِيَّةُ الَّتِي تَمِيلُ إِلَيْهَا ؟

But what is the musical instrument (which) you like? "

أَجَابَ نَبِيلٌ : أَمِيلُ إِلَى الْبِيَانُو . هُوَ أَقْدَرُ آلَةٍ عَلَى أَدَاءِ الْأَنْغَامِ الْمُخْتَلِفَةِ .

Nabil answered, " I like the piano. It is the instrument most capable of producing different tunes. "

قَالَ الْوَالِدُ : هَذَا رَأْيُكَ ، وَلَكِنْ لَنْ يُوَافِقَ عَلَيْهِ جَمِيعُ النَّاسِ .

The father said , " That's your own point of view, but not all people will agree to it.

لِكُلِّ آلَةٍ أَنْغَامٌ تَصْلُحُ لَهَا وَلَا تَصْلُحُ لِآلَةٍ غَيْرِهَا .

Each instrument has tunes fit for it but not for any other (instrument). "

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ : أَنَا أَمِيلُ إِلَى الْبِيَانُو عَلَى أَيَّةِ حَالَةٍ .

Nabil said, " I like the piano at any rate. "

قَالَ الْوَالِدُ : أَعْرِفُ مُعَلِّماً مَاهِراً لِلْعَزْفِ عَلَى الْبِيَانُو .

The father said, " I know of a skilful piano teacher. "

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ : أَذْهَبُ إِلَيْهِ غَدًا كَيْ أَبْدَأَ دُرُوسِي مَعَهُ .

Nabil said, " I'll go to him tomorrow to begin my lessons with him. "

قَالَ الْوالِدُ : أَرْجُو أَنْ يُسْعِدَكَ الْحَظُّ . مَنْ يَدْرِى ؟ قَدْ تَصِيرُ عَازِفًا مَاهِرًا .

The father said, "I hope you will be lucky.
Who knows ? You may become a skilful (piano) player."

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ : عِنْدَئِذٍ أَلْتَحِقُ بِمَعْهَدِ الْمُوسِيقَا لِأُوَاصِلَ دِرَاسَتِى .

Nabil said, "Then I'll join the Institute of Music to pursue my study."

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلاَحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَتَعَلَّمَ الْمُوسِيقَا .

(أَنْ) is a particle, and (أَتَعَلَّمَ) is a verb in the present tense. They together replace the infinitive, and so we can say: أُرِيدُ تَعَلُّمَ الْمُوسِيقَا . (أَنْ) is therefore called 'infinitival' (اَلْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ) .

2. لَنْ تَكُونَ فَنَّاناً

(لَنْ) is a particle of negation that precedes the present-tense verb (تَكُونَ) . Negation here refers to the future; the sentence means : «You will not be an artist. »

3. أَذْهَبُ إِلَيْهِ كَيْ أَبْدَأَ دُرُوسِي .

(كَيْ) is a particle. It is used here with the present-tense verb (أَبْدَأَ) *to* express that the purpose of going is to begin the lessons.

4. أَلْتَحِقُ بِالْمَعْهَدِ لِأُوَاصِلَ دِرَاسَتِي .

(اَللاَّم) in (لِأُوَاصِلَ) is a particle denoting that the pursual of studies is the cause of joining the Institute.
It is therefore called the لاَم of causation (لاَمُ التَّعْلِيلِ) .

5- كَيْ – لَنْ – أَنْ – لَامُ التَّعْلِيلِ

These are particles that may be used with the present for special purposes you have known.

Note that the end of the present verb in each of the previous examples carries (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). The verb is therefore in the subjunctive mood indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). Hence, the present following أَنْ , لَنْ , كَيْ and لَامُ التَّعْلِيلِ is in the subjunctive mood.

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Fill in the blanks with (أَنْ) , (لَنْ) , (كَيْ) or (لَامُ التَّعْلِيلِ) :

ا – تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى الْمَوْهِبَةِ ..... تَكُونَ فَنَّاناً .

ب – ..... يُوَافِقَ عَلَيْهِ جَمِيعُ النَّاسِ .

جـ – تَسْتَطِيعُ ..... تَتَعَلَّمَ الْمُوسِيقَا .

د – تَحْتَاجُ الْمَوْهِبَةُ إِلَى زَمَنٍ ..... تَظْهَرَ .

2. *Fill in* the blanks with suitable present-tense verbs and indicate *the sign of* the mood.

ا – لَنْ ..... لِآلَةٍ غَيْرِهَا .

ب – أَرْجُو أَنْ ..... الْحَظُّ .

جـ – تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ ..... نَفْسَكَ ، لـ ..... حَقِيقَةَ أَمْرِكَ .

3. Fill in the blanks with suitable present-tense verbs and mark the final vowel. (Revise lesson 43)

ا – أَشْرَفُ يُحِبُّ أَنْ ..... مِثْلَ أَبِيهِ .

ب – إِلْهَامُ تُحَاوِلُ أَنْ ..... أُمَّهَا .

جـ – أَشْرَفُ يَقُولُ : أُحِبُّ أَنْ ..... نَظَّارَةً .

د – إِلْهَامُ تَقُولُ : أُحِبُّ أَنْ ..... حَقِيبَةً فِي يَدِي .

4. Fill in the blanks with suitable particles that make the present-tense verb subjunctive :

ا – نَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْبُرْجِ ..... نَتَفَرَّجَ عَلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ .

ب – أُرِيدُ ..... أُشَاهِدَ الْأَهْرَامَ .

جـ – ..... يَخْرُجَ أَبِى مِنَ الْمَنْزِلِ يوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ الْمُقْبِلَ .

د – أُخْتِى تُحِبُّ ..... تَأْكُلَ الْفَطِيرَ .

هـ – نَبِيلٌ يَنْتَظِرُ في الْمَحَطَّةِ ..... يُسَلِّمَ عَلَى ابْنِ عَمِّهِ خَلِيلٍ .

5. Fill in the blanks with suitable present-tense verbs marking their final vowels. (Revise lesson 51)

ا – نَقْرَأُ الْجَرِيدَةَ لـ ..... الْأَخْبَارَ .

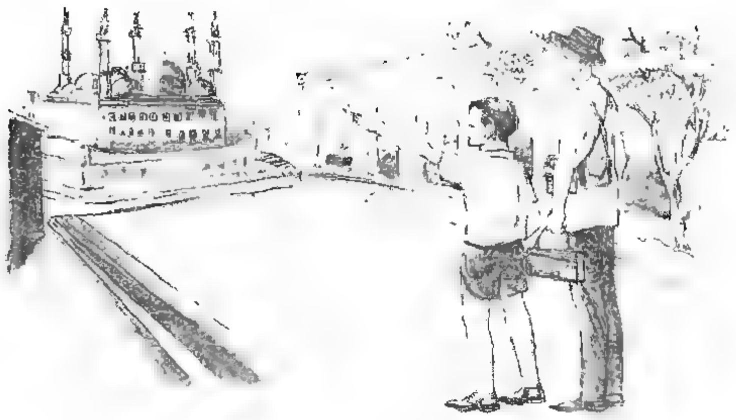
ب – اَلْفَلَّاحَةُ تُرَبِّى الدَّجَاجَ كَىْ ..... مِنْهُ الْبَيْضَ .

جـ – نَرْكَبُ الطَّيَّارَةَ لـ ..... بِسُرْعَةٍ .

د – فَتَحَ الْخَادِمُ النَّافِذَةَ كَىْ ..... ضَوْءُ الشَّمْسِ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الرَّابِعُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Four



حَضَارَةُ الْعَرَبِ

The Civilization of the Arabs

نَبِيلٌ : هَلْ قَرَأْتَ تَارِيخَ الْعَرَبِ ؟

Nabil : « Have you read the history of the Arabs ?

وَهَلْ عَرَفْتَ حَضَارَتَهُمْ ؟

And have you known their civilization ? »

اَلسَّائِحُ : لَمْ أَقْرَأْ هَذَا التَّارِيخَ ،

The tourist : « I have not read that history,

وَلَمْ أَعْرِفْ شَيْئًا عَنْ تِلْكَ الْحَضَارَةِ .

and I have not learnt anything about that civilization. »

نَبِيلٌ : لاَ تَقُلْ ذَلِكَ .

Nabil : « Don't say that;

مَنْ يَجْهَلُ تَارِيخَهُمْ وَحَضَارَتَهُمْ ؟

nobody is ignorant of their history and civilization. (who is ignorant of ... ?)„

اَلسَّائِحُ : لِتَتَحَدَّثْ عَنْهَا مِنْ فَضْلِكَ .

The tourist : « Talk about them, please. »

نَبِيلٌ : لَمْ يَنْهَضِ الْعَرَبُ إِلَّا بَعْدَ الْإِسْلَامِ .

Nabil : « The Arabs did not rise except after Islam.

فَقَدْ جَمَعَ الْإِسْلَامُ كَلِمَتَهُمْ ،

Islam united them,

وَدَعَاهُمْ لِلْجِهَادِ ،

and called them to Jihad (holy war);

فَفَتَحُوا بِلَادَ الْفُرْسِ وَالرُّومِ .

so they conquered the countries of the Persians and the Byzantines. »

اَلسَّائِحُ : وَكَيْفَ حَكَمُوا تِلْكَ الْبِلَادَ ؟

The tourist : « How did they rule those countries ? »

نَبِيلٌ : نَشَرُوا فِيهَا الْعَدْلَ وَالْأَمْنَ ،

Nabil : « They spread justice and security in them;

فَعَاشَ أَهْلُهَا فِي رَخَاءٍ وَسَلَامٍ .

and so their people lived in plenitude and peace. »

اَلسَّائِحُ : وَهَلِ اهْتَمُّوا بِالْعُلُومِ وَالْفُنُونِ ؟

The tourist : « Were they interested in science and art ? »

نَبِيلٌ : نَعَمْ ، لَمْ يَغِبْ عَنْهُمْ فَضْلُهَا .

Nabil, « Yes, they were not unaware of their value.

اشْتَغَلُوا بِعُلُومِ الدِّينِ وَاللُّغَةِ وَالْأَدَبِ .

They dealt with the subjects of religion, language and literature,

وَتَرْجَمُوا كُتُبَ الْيُونَانِ وَالْفُرْسِ .

and translated the books of the Greeks and the Persians.

وَاشْتَغَلُوا بِالْفَلْسَفَةِ ، وَالطِّبِّ ، وَالرِّيَاضَةِ ، وَالْفَلَكِ ،

They dealt with philosophy, medicine, mathematics and astronomy.

كَمَا اشْتَغَلُوا بِالطَّبِيعَةِ ، وَالْكِيمِيَاءِ ، وَالْمُوسِيقَا .

They also studied physics, chemistry and music. "

السَّائِحُ : لَمْ أَسْمَعْ بِذَلِكَ مِنْ قَبْلُ .

The tourist : " I've never heard that before. "

نَبِيلٌ : لِتَقْرَأْ تَارِيخَ الْعَرَبِ ، وَلْتَطَّلِعْ عَلَى عُلُومِهِمْ وَحَضَارَتِهِمْ .

Nabil: " You should read the history of the Arabs and make yourself familiar with their sciences and civilization. "

السَّائِحُ : شَوَّقْتَنِي إِلَى أَنْ أَعْرِفَ الْكَثِيرَ عَنِ الْعَرَبِ .

The tourist : " You have made me anxious to know a lot about the Arabs. "

نَبِيلٌ : لَا تَنْتَظِرْ وَلَا تَتَرَدَّدْ ، فَإِنَّ مَاقُلْتُهُ قَلِيلٌ مِنْ كَثِيرٍ .

Nabil: " Don't wait and don't hesitate; what I have said is only a little of so much.

إِنَّ الْعَرَبَ أُمَّةٌ عَرِيقَةٌ وَحَضَارَتُهُمْ عَظِيمَةٌ .

The Arabs are an old-rooted nation, and their civilization is great. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

You have known that the present-tense verb assumes the subjunctive mood if it is preceded by :

أَنْ – لَنْ – كَيْ – لَامُ التَّعْلِيلِ

Now you are going to know other particles that affect this verb differently.

1. Read the following sentence :

لَمْ أَقْرَأْ هَذَا التَّارِيخَ .

This is a verbal sentence containing a present-tense verb (أَقْرَأْ) .

Note that the verb is preceded by the particle (لَمْ) : it is therefore in the jussive mood which is indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ) on the last letter of the verb.

Note that (لَمْ) negates the verb and that this negation applies to the past.

2. Read the following sentences :

لِتَتَحَدَّثْ عَنْهَا مِنْ فَضْلِكَ .   لِتَقْرَأْ تَارِيخَهُمْ .

These two verbal sentences have present-tense verbs: (تَتَحَدَّثْ) in the first, and (تَقْرَأْ) in the second.

Note that the last letter of each verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) ; the verb is therefore in the jussive mood. The reason for this is that it is preceded by the imperative (لِ) (لَامُ الْأَمْرِ) .

3. Read the following sentences:

لَا تَتَرَدَّدْ ، وَلَا تَنْتَظِرْ .

These two verbal sentences have present-tense verbs: (تَتَرَدَّدْ) in the first,

and (تَنْتَظِرْ) in the second. Note that the last letter of each verb is marked with (السُّكُونُ) ; the verb is therefore in the jussive mood. The reason for this is that it is preceded by the prohibitive (لَا) (لَا النَّاهِيَةُ) .

Hence, the present-tense verb assumes the jussive mood if it is preceded by one of the following particles:

لَمْ – لَامُ الْأَمْرِ – لَا النَّاهِيَةُ .

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the mood of the verbs in the following sentences stating the reason:

ا – لَمْ أَعْرِفْ شَيْئًا عَنْ حَضَارَةِ الْعَرَبِ .

ب – لَمْ يَنْهَضِ الْعَرَبُ إِلَّا بَعْدَ الْإِسْلَامِ .

جـ – لَا تَقُلْ ذَلِكَ .

د – لِتَطَّلِعْ عَلَى عُلُومِهِمْ وَحَضَارَتِهِمْ .

2. Fill in the blanks with لَمْ , لَامُ الْأَمْرِ or لَا النَّاهِيَةُ :

ا – . . . . . نَرْكَبِ الْبَاخِرَةَ صَبَاحاً .

ب – . . . . . تَذْهَبْ فِي رِحْلَةٍ إِلَى أُسْوَانَ .

جـ – . . . . . تَرْفَعِ السَّمَّاعَةَ لِتَتَكَلَّمَ مَعَ صَدِيقِكَ .

د – . . . . . تَقْرَأْ فِي ضَوْءٍ ضَعِيفٍ .

3. Fill in each of the following blanks with a suitable present-tense verb chosen from those given in brackets :

(تَرْكَبْ – تَنْزِلْ – تَأْكُلْ – أَقْطِفْ)

ا – لَمْ . . . . . أَزْهَارَ الْحَدِيقَةِ .

ب – لِـ . . . . . الْقِطَارَ السَّرِيعَ .

جـ – لَا . . . . . مِنَ السَّيَّارَةِ وَهِيَ تَتَحَرَّكُ .

د – لَا . . . . . الْخُضَرَ غَيْرَ الطَّازَجَةِ .

4. Replace the imperative verb by a present-tense verb preceded by

لَامُ الْأَمْرِ The first sentence is given as an example :

ا ـ اِسْمَعِ الرَّادْيُو . لِتَسْمَعِ الرَّادْيُو

ب ـ شَاهِدِ الْأَهْرَامَ .

جـ ـ اِقْرَأِ الصُّحُفَ .

د ـ اِفْتَحِ الْبَابَ .

الدَّرْسُ الْخَامِسُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Five

الْجَيْشُ

The Army

تَعْتَمِدُ الْأُمَمُ عَلَى جَيْشِهَا فِي أُمُورٍ كَثِيرَةٍ :

Nations depend on their armies in many matters.

يُرَابِطُ الْجَيْشُ عَلَى الْحُدُودِ ،

The army is stationed on the frontiers,

وَيَرُدُّ عَنِ الْبِلَادِ الْمُعْتَدِينَ ،

repels the assailants attacking the country

وَلَا يَتَهَاوَنُ فِي الدِّفَاعِ عَنْ حُرِّيَّتِهَا .

and does not slacken in defending its freedom.

وَفِي السِّلْمِ قَدْ يُشَارِكُ فِي الْبِنَاءِ وَالتَّعْمِيرِ :

In time of peace, it may participate in building and construction :

فَيُكَافِحُ آفَاتِ الزِّرَاعَةِ ، وَيُسْهِمُ فِي الصِّنَاعَةِ ،

it fights against plant diseases, plays its part in industry,

وَيُسْعِفُ ضَحَايَا الْكَوَارِثِ ،

goes to the rescue of the victims of disasters,

وَيُؤَدِّبُ الْمُفْسِدِينَ وَالْمُتَمَرِّدِينَ .

and punishes corruptors and rebels.

يَتَكَوَّنُ الْجَيْشُ مِنْ عِدَّةِ أَسْلِحَةٍ :

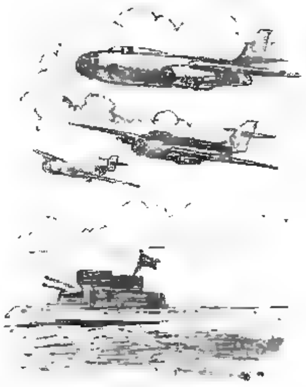
The army consists of many forces :

اَلسِّلَاحِ الْبَرِّيِّ وَالسِّلَاحِ الْبَحْرِيِّ وَالسِّلَاحِ الْجَوِّيِّ .

the land force, the naval force, and the air force.

يَسْتَخْدِمُ السِّلَاحُ الْبَرِّيُّ الْمَدَافِعَ وَالْبَنَادِقَ

The land force uses guns, rifles,



وَالدَّبَّابَاتِ وَالسَّيَّارَاتِ الْمُصَفَّحَةَ .

tanks and armoured cars.

وَيَسْتَخْدِمُ السِّلَاحُ الْبَحْرِيُّ الْمُدَمِّرَاتِ

The naval force uses destroyers,

وَالْغَوَّاصَاتِ وَزَوَارِقَ الطُّورْبِيدِ .

submarines and torpedo boats.

وَيَسْتَخْدِمُ السِّلَاحُ الْجَوِّيُّ قَاذِفَاتِ الْقَنَابِلِ

The air force uses bombers

وَالطَّائِرَاتِ الْمُقَاتِلَةَ .

and fighters.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

You have already learnt that the present-tense verb may be preceded by certain particles that make it subjunctive, or by others that make it jussive.

In this lesson we learn the mood of the present - tense verb when it is not preceded by such particles.

١ يُرَابِطُ الْجَيْشُ عَلَى الْحُدُودِ .
وَيُشَارِكُ فِي الْبِنَاءِ وَالتَّعْمِيرِ .
وَيُسْعِفُ ضَحَايَا الْكَوَارِثِ .

These are three verbal sentences each beginning with a present-tense verb not preceded by a subjunctive or a jussive particle.

Note that the vowel at the end of each verb is(الضَّمَّةَ) ; it is therefore in the indicative mood.

Hence the present-tense verb is in the indicative mood if it is not preceded by a particle that requires the subjunctive or jussive mood.

٢ لَا يُفَرِّطُ الْجَيْشُ فِي حُقُوقِ دَوْلَتِهِ .

You have already learnt that the present-tense verb is in the jussive mood when it is preceded by the prohibitive لَا (لَا النَّاهِيَةُ) .

Note that (لَا) in this sentence is different in meaning from the prohibitive (لَا) ; it expresses mere negation and is called the negative (لَا) (لَا النَّافِيَةُ) .

Note that the end of the present-tense verb (يُفَرِّطُ) is marked with(الضَّمَّةَ);

it is therefore in the indicative mood. This indicates that the negative (لَا) does not affect the mood of the present-tense verb.

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Underline the indicative present-tense verbs in the following sentences. State the reason why these verbs are in the indicative mood.

ا – تَعْتَمِدُ الأُمَمُ عَلَى جَيْشِهَا فِي أُمُورٍ كَثِيرَةٍ .

ب – اَلْجَيْشُ يَرُدُّ عَنِ الْبِلَادِ الْمُعْتَدِينَ .

ج – وَقَدْ يُشَارِكُ فِي الْبِنَاءِ وَالتَّعْمِيرِ .

د – يُكَافِحُ آفَاتِ الزِّرَاعَةِ ، وَيُسْهِمُ فِي الصِّنَاعَةِ .

ه – وَيُؤَدِّبُ الْمُفْسِدِينَ وَالْمُتَمَرِّدِينَ .

2. Put the present-tense verbs in brackets in their appropriate places in the following sentences:

(يُحَاوِلُ – تُحِبُّ – يَلْبَسُ – يُمْسِكُ)

ا – أَشْرَفُ ..... نَظَّارَةَ وَالِدِه .

ب – ..... أَشْرَفُ أَنْ يَقْرَأَ الْجَرِيدَةَ .

ج – هُوَ ..... بِالْقَلَمِ فِي يَدِهِ لِيَكْتُبَ .

د – إِلْهَامُ ..... أَنْ تَكُونَ مِثْلَ أُمِّهَا .

3. Indicate the indicative, subjunctive and jussive present-tense verbs in the following. Then state the reason for the mood of each verb.

ا – أُحِبُّ أَنْ تَجْتَهِدَ فِي عَمَلِكَ .

ب – لَاتُهْمِلْ دُرُوسَكَ .

ج – اِجْتَهِدْ كَيْ تَنْجَحَ .

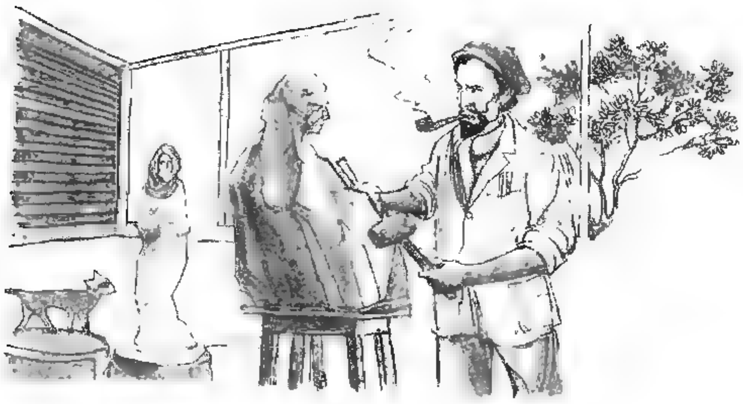
د – اِسْمَعِ الشَّرْحَ لِتَفْهَمَ .

ه – لَمْ يَنْجَحِ التِّلْمِيذُ الْكَسْلَانُ .

و – يَنْجَحُ التِّلْمِيذُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ .

الدَّرْسُ السَّادِسُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Six



النَّحْتُ

Sculpture

النَّحْتُ فَنٌّ جَمِيلٌ .

Sculpture is a beautiful art.

يَنْحِتُ الْمَثَّالُ التَّمَاثِيلَ بِالْإِزْمِيلِ . إِنَّ الْإِزْمِيلَ أَدَاةُ الْمَثَّالِ ، كَمَا أَنَّ الْفُرْشَةَ أَدَاةُ الْمُصَوِّرِ .

The sculptor carves statues with the chisel. The chisel is the instrument of the sculptor as the brush is the instrument of the painter.

تُنْحَتُ التَّمَاثِيلُ مِنَ الْحَجَرِ أَوِ الْخَشَبِ .

Statues are carved from stone or wood.

يُنْحَتُ التِّمْثَالُ لِيُمَثِّلَ إِنْسَاناً أَوْ حَيَوَاناً أَوْ شَيْئاً مُعَيَّناً .

The statue is carved to represent a human being, an animal or a certain thing.

وَقَدْ يُرِيدُ الْمَثَّالُ أَنْ يُعَبِّرَ عَنْ فِكْرَةٍ مُعَيَّنَةٍ كَالْأَمَلِ أَوِ السَّلَامِ أَوِ التَّعَاوُنِ ،

The sculptor may want to express such an idea as hope, peace or cooperation,

فَيَكُونُ تِمْثَالُهُ مُعَبِّراً عَنْ هَذِهِ الْفِكْرَةِ .

and so his statue expresses that idea.

تُنْصَبُ التَّمَاثِيلُ فِي الْمَيَادِينِ وَالْحَدَائِقِ الْعَامَّةِ كَيْ يُشَاهِدَهَا النَّاسُ.

Statues are erected in squares and public gardens for people to see.

فِي مَيْدَانِ رَمْسِيسَ بِالْقَاهِرَةِ تِمْثَالٌ عَظِيمٌ لِلْمَلِكِ رَمْسِيسَ الثَّانِي .

In Ramses Square in Cairo there is a magnificent statue of Ramses the Second.

كَانَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ الْقُدَمَاءُ مَثَّالِينَ بَارِعِينَ .

The ancient Egyptians were skilful sculptors.

لَنْ يَشْهَدَ الْعَالَمُ نَظِيراً لِتَمَاثِيلِ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ الْقُدَمَاءِ .

The world will never see anything like the statues of the ancient Egyptians.

كَانَتْ تَمَاثِيلُ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ ضَخْمَةً غَالِباً ، وَلَكِنَّهَا دَقِيقَةُ التَّعْبِيرِ أَيْضاً.

The statues of the Egyptians were often huge but minutely expressive.

اهْتَمَّ الْمَثَّالُ الْمِصْرِيُّ بِالضَّخَامَةِ ، وَلَكِنَّهُ لَمْ يُهْمِلْ دِقَّةَ التَّعْبِيرِ .

The Egyptian sculptor was interested in hugeness but he did not neglect minute expression.

ضَخَّمَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ تَمَاثِيلَ مُلُوكِهِمْ تَمْجِيداً لَهُمْ .

The Egyptians made the statues of their kings huge to glorify them.

قَالَ سَالِمٌ لِابْنِهِ : غَداً يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ . لِتَذْهَبْ إِلَى الْمُتْحَفِ الْمِصْرِيِّ ،

Salim said to his son, " Tomorrow is Friday. Go to the Egyptian Museum,

وَلَا يَفُتْكَ أَنْ تَأْخُذَ أُخْتَكَ مَعَكَ .

and do not forget to take your sister along with you. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. يَنْحِتُ الْمَثَّالُ التَّمَاثِيلَ . تُنْحَتُ التَّمَاثِيلُ مِنَ الْحَجَرِ .

The first sentence consists of a present-tense verb (يَنْحِتُ), a subject (اَلْمَثَّالُ) in the nominative case indicated by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) and a direct object (اَلتَّمَاثِيلَ) in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). The verb (يَنْحِتُ) is in the indicative mood indicated by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) since it is not preceded by any of the subjunctive or jussive *particles*.

In the second sentence, the *verb* is rendered passive by marking the initial letter with (اَلضَّمَّةُ) and the penultimate with (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). The direct object becomes the substitute of the subject (اَلتَّمَاثِيلُ) and assumes the *nominative* case indicated *here by* (اَلضَّمَّةُ). The present-tense verb is in the indicative mood indicated by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) since *it is* not preceded by any of the subjunctive or jussive particles.

2. كَانَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ مَثَّالِينَ بَارِعِينَ .

This sentence was *originally* (اَلْمِصْرِيُّونَ مَثَّالُونَ بَارِعُونَ). As (كَانَ) begins the sentence, the predicate (مَثَّالِينَ) assumes the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْيَاءُ), and the subject (اَلْمِصْرِيُّونَ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْوَاوُ).

3. إِنَّ الْإِزْمِيلَ أَدَاةُ الْمَثَّالِ ، كَمَا أَنَّ الْفُرْشَةَ أَدَاةُ الْمُصَوِّرِ .

(إِنَّ) is an emphatic *particle*. It causes (اَلْإِزْمِيلَ) to assume the accusative

case indicated here by (الْفَتْحَةُ) ; the predicate (أَدَاةٌ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (الضَّمَّةُ).

Similarly (أَنَّ), in the second sentence, causes (الْفُرْشَةَ) to assume the accusative case indicated here by (الْفَتْحَةُ) ; the predicate (أَدَاةٌ) remains in the nominative case indicated here by (الضَّمَّةُ).

4. (ا) يُرِيدُ الْمَثَّالُ أَنْ يُعَبِّرَ عَنْ فِكْرَةٍ مُعَيَّنَةٍ .

(أَنْ) is a particle that causes the present-tense verb (يُعَبِّرَ) following it to assume the subjunctive mood indicated here by (الْفَتْحَةُ). This particle is called the infinitival (أَنْ) (أَنِ الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ) because it, together with the present-tense verb, may replace the infinitive.

The verb (يُرِيدُ) is in the indicative mood because it is not preceded by any of the subjunctive or jussive particles.

(ب) لَنْ يَشْهَدَ الْعَالَمُ نَظِيراً لِتَمَاثِيلِ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ .

(لَنْ) is a particle that expresses negation in the future. The present-tense verb that follows it (يَشْهَدَ) is in the subjunctive mood indicated by (الْفَتْحَةُ).

(جـ) يَنْحَتُ التَّمْثَالُ لِيُمَثِّلَ شَيْئاً مُعَيَّناً .

(اللَّامُ) in (لِيُمَثِّلَ) is the (لَام) of causation (لَامُ التَّعْلِيلِ). The present-tense verb (يُمَثِّلَ) that follows it is in the subjunctive mood indicated by (الْفَتْحَةُ).

Note that the present-tense verb (يُنْحَتُ) is in the indicative mood indicated by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) because it it not preceded by a subjunctive or a jussive particle.

(د) تُنْصَبُ التَّمَاثِيلُ كَيْ يُشَاهِدَهَا النَّاسُ .

The present-tense verb (يُشَاهِدَ) following (كَيْ) is in the subjunctive mood indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). But the present-tense verb (تُنْصَبُ) is in the indicative mood because it is not preceded by a subjunctive or a jussive particle.

5. (ا) لَمْ يُهْمِلِ الْمَثَّالُ الْمِصْرِيُّ دِقَّةَ التَّعْبِيرِ .

(لَمْ) is a particle that expresses negation in the past. The present-tense verb that follows it is in the jussive mood indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ).

(ب) لِتَذْهَبْ يَا نَبِيلُ إِلَى الْمُتْحَفِ الْمِصْرِيِّ .

(لِ) in (لِتَذْهَبْ) is the imperative لَام (لَامُ الْأَمْرِ) . The present-tense verb that follows it is in the jussive mood indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ).

(جـ) لَا يَفُتْكَ أَنْ تَأْخُذَ أُخْتَكَ مَعَكَ .

(لَا) in this sentence is the prohibitive (لَا) (لَاالنَّاهِيَةُ). The present-tense verb following it (يَفُتْ) is in the jussive mood indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ).

(أَنْ) is infinitival. The present-tense verb following it (تَأْخُذَ) is in the subjunctive mood indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Begin the following sentence with (كَانَ)and then with(إِنَّ). Make any necessary changes.

اَلنَّحْتُ فَنٌّ جَمِيلٌ .

2. Omit(إِنَّ) from the first sentence, (كَانَتْ) from the second, (لَيْتَ) from the third, and (لَيْسَ) from the fourth. Make any necessary changes.

ا – إِنَّ الْإِزْمِيلَ أَدَاةُ الْمَثَّالِ .

ب – كَانَتْ تَمَاثِيلُ الْمِصْرِيِّينَ ضَخْمَةً غَالِباً .

ج – لَيْتَ التِّمْثَالَ مُعَبِّرٌ عَنِ الْفِكْرَةِ .

د – لَيْسَ بَابُ الْجُنَيْنَةِ مَفْتُوحاً .

3. Change the underlined verbs into passive. Make any necessary changes.

ا – نَصَبَتِ الدَّوْلَةُ التَّمَاثِيلَ فِي الْمَيَادِينِ .

ب – تَنْصِبُ الدَّوْلَةُ التَّمَاثِيلَ فِي الْحَدَائِقِ الْعَامَّةِ .

4. Indicate the subjunctive and jussive particles in the following sentences:

ا – أَرَادَ أَشْرَفُ أَنْ يُكَلِّمَ صَدِيقَهُ فِي التِّلِيفُونِ .

ب – قَالَ أَشْرَفُ لِأَخِيهِ : لِتُحْضِرْ دَلِيلَ التِّلِيفُونِ .

ج – نَحْنُ نَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْمَسْرَحِ لِنُشَاهِدَ الرِّوَايَةَ .

د – قَالَتْ نِهَادُ : لَمْ أَقْطِفِ الْوَرْدَ يَا أَبِى ، وَلَمْ يَلْعَبْ نَبِيلٌ فِى الْجُنَيْنَةِ .

هـ – تَرَكَ أَخِي بَيْتَهُ لِيَسْكُنَ فِى بَيْت وَاسِعٍ .

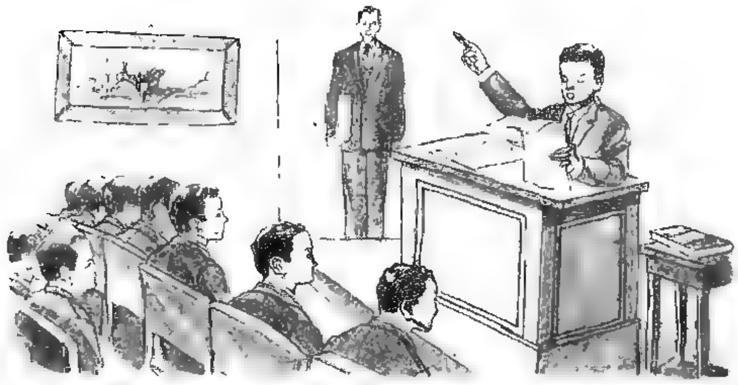
و – لَا تُغْلِقِ النَّافِذَةَ لِأَنَّ ضَوْءَ الشَّمْسِ مَحْبُوبٌ .

ز – فَتَحْتُ النَّافِذَةَ كَيْ يَدْخُلَ الْهَوَاءُ .

ح – لَا تَرْجِعْ إِلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ قَبْلَ أُسْبُوعٍ .

اَلدَّرْسُ السَّابِعُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Seven



اَلشِّعْرُ

Poetry

اَلْأَدَبُ يَنْقَسِمُ إِلَى نَثْرٍ وَشِعْرٍ . وَالْأُدَبَاءُ يَنْقَسِمُونَ إِلَى كُتَّابٍ وَشُعَرَاءَ.

Literature is either prose or poetry. Men of letters are either writers or poets.

اَلْكُتَّابُ يَكْتُبُونَ النَّثْرَ ، وَالشُّعَرَاءُ يَنْظِمُونَ الشِّعْرَ .

Writers write prose, and poets compose poetry.

اَلْقَصِيدَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ تَتَكَوَّنُ مِنْ أَبْيَاتٍ .

The Arabic poem consists of verses.

اَلْأَبْيَاتُ تَتَكَوَّنُ مِنْ أَشْطُرٍ .

The verses *consist* of hemistiches.

اَلشَّطْرَانِ يُكَوِّنَانِ الْبَيْتَ الْوَاحِدَ .

Every two hemistiches make one verse.

أَبْيَاتُ الْقَصِيدَةِ تَتَّفِقُ فِي الْوَزْنِ وَالْقَافِيَةِ .

The verses of the poem agree in rhythm and rhyme.

عَلَى الشُّعَرَاءِ أَنْ يَلْتَزِمُوا الْوَزْنَ وَالْقَافِيَةَ ، كَيْ يَنْظِمُوا شِعْراً مُتَمَاسِكاً .

Poets must observe the rhythm and rhyme in order that they may compose coherent poetry.

نَحْنُ الْآنَ فِي اجْتِمَاعٍ لِجَمْعِيَّةِ الشِّعْرِ . قَالَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الْمُشْرِفُ لِلطَّلَبَةِ الْأَعْضَاءِ :

We are now in a meeting of the Society of Poetry. The supervisor said to the student members,

أَنْتُمْ تُرِيدُونَ أَنْ تَكُونُوا شُعَرَاءَ .

" You want to be poets.

لِتَعْلَمُوا إِذَنْ أَنَّ لِلشِّعْرِ قَوَاعِدَ خَاصَّةً ، فَلَا تُهْمِلُوا هَذِهِ الْقَوَاعِدَ .

You should know then that poetry has certain rules; do not neglect these rules.

لَنْ تَكُونُوا شُعَرَاءَ إِذَا لَمْ تَتَّبِعُوا هَذِهِ الْقَوَاعِدَ .

You will never be poets if you do not follow these rules."

وَقَالَ الْأُسْتَاذُ لِطَالِبَيْنِ :

The teacher said to two students,

أَنَا مَسْرُورٌ بِشِعْرِكُمَا الَّذِي سَمِعْتُهُ الْآنَ . قَدْ تُصْبِحَانِ شَاعِرَيْنِ مُجِيدَيْنِ .

" I am pleased with your poetry which I have heard (just) now. You two may become good poets.

لَدَيْكُمَا الْمَوْهِبَةُ ، فَلَا تُهْمِلَا الْمِرَانَ . أَنْتُمَا تَعْلَمَانِ أَنَّ الشِّعْرَ مَوْهِبَةٌ وَمِرَانٌ .

You two have the talent; so do not neglect practising.
You two know that poetry requires talent and practice.

لَنْ تَصِيرَا شَاعِرَيْنِ إِذَا لَمْ تُوَاظِبَا عَلَى الْمِرَانِ .

You will not be poets if you do not keep on practising."

وَقَالَ الْأُسْتَاذُ لِطَالِبَةٍ :

The teacher said to a girl student,

وأَنْتِ أَيْضاً قَدْ تُصْبِحِينَ شَاعِرَةً مُجِيدَةً . لَدَيْكِ الْمَوْهِبَةُ ، فَلَا تُهْمِلِي الْمِرَانَ .

" You, too, may become a good poetess. You have the talent; so do not neglect practising.

وَأَرْجُو أَنْ تَنْظِمِي قَصِيدَةً جَدِيدَةً لِلاجْتِمَاعِ الْقَادِمِ .

I hope you will write a new poem for the next meeting."

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. (ا) اَلشَّطْرَانِ يَكُوِّنَانِ الْبَيْتَ الْوَاحِدَ .

(يُكَوِّنَانِ) is a present-tense verb consisting of (يُكَوِّنُ) + « the (أَلِفُ) of the two » (أَلِفُ الاثْنَيْنِ) which is related to the dual (اَلشَّطْرَانِ) preceding the verb + a redundant (نُونٌ).

(ب) قَدْ تُصْبِحَانِ شَاعِرَيْنِ مُجِيدَيْنِ .

(تُصْبِحَانِ) is a present-tense verb consisting of (تُصْبِحُ) + «the (أَلِف) of the two » related to the two persons addressed + a redundant (نُونٌ).

(جـ) اَلْأُدَبَاءُ يَنْقَسِمُونَ إِلَى كُتَّابٍ وَشُعَرَاءَ .

(يَنْقَسِمُونَ) is a present-tense verb consisting of (يَنْقَسِمُ) + «the (وَاو) of the plural» (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) related to the plural (اَلْأُدَبَاءُ) preceding the verb + a redundant (نُونٌ).

(د) أَنْتُمْ تُرِيدُونَ .

(تُرِيدُونَ) is a present-tense verb consisting of (تُرِيدُ) + «the (وَاو) of the plural » related to the more-than-two persons addressed + a redundant (نُونٌ).

(هـ) قَدْ تُصْبِحِينَ شَاعِرَةً مُجِيدَةً .

(تُصْبِحِينَ) is a present-tense verb consisting of (تُصْبِحُ) + « the (يَاء) referring to the female person addressed » يَاءُ الْمُخَاطَبَةِ + a redundant (نُونٌ).

2. The five previous present-tense verbs:

يَكُونَانِ — تُصْبِحَانِ — يَنْقَسِمُونَ — تُرِيدُ... — تُصْبِحِينَ contain the (أَلِف) of the two, the (وَاو) of the plural, or the (يَاء) of the female addressed. These verbs are called the « five verbs » (الأَفْعَالُ الخَمْسَةُ) .

3. The present-tense verbs in the previous examples are in the indicative mood because they are not preceded by subjunctive or jussive particles. Note that (النُّونَ) is suffixed to each verb denoting the indicative mood.

4. When these verbs occur in the subjunctive or jussive mood, this (نُون) is omitted. Examples:

لَنْ تَكُونُوا شُعَرَاءَ إِذَا لَمْ تَتَّبِعُوا هَذِهِ الْقَوَاعِدَ .

(تَكُونُوا) was originally (تَكُونُونَ) ; the (نُون) has been omitted because the verb is preceded by the particle (لَنْ) which requires the subjunctive mood.

(تَتَّبِعُوا) was originally (تَتَّبِعُونَ); the (نُون) has been omitted because the verb is preceded by the particle (لَمْ) which requires the jussive mood.

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Analyse each of the indicative verbs in the following sentences into its three parts :

ا – اَلْأُدَبَاءُ يَكْتُبُونَ النَّثْرَ ، وَالشُّعَرَاءُ يَنْظِمُونَ الشِّعْرَ .

ب – أَنْتُمَا تَعْلَمَانِ أَنَّ الشِّعْرَ مَوْهِبَةٌ وَمِرَانٌ .

جـ – اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ يَحْمِلُونَ حَقَائِبَ صَغِيرَةً .

د – يَا إِلْهَامُ أَنْتِ تَشْرَبِينَ عَصِيرَ اللَّيْمُونِ لِأَنَّكِ تَتْعَبِينَ مِنَ الْحَرِّ .

هـ – اَلطَّائِرَتَانِ تَطِيرَانِ فِي الْجَوِّ .

و – أَنْتُمْ تَسْأَلُونَ وَنَحْنُ نُجِيبُ .

2. Indicate the subjunctive and jussive particles in the following sentences. Mark the sign of the subjunctive or the jussive mood.

ا – عَلَى الشُّعَرَاءِ أَنْ يَلْتَزِمُوا الْوَزْنَ وَالْقَافِيَةَ ، كَيْ يَنْظِمُوا شِعْرًا مُتَمَاسِكًا .

ب – أَنْتُمْ تُرِيدُونَ أَنْ تَكُونُوا شُعَرَاءَ .

جـ – لَا تُهْمِلَا الْمِرَانَ .

د – لَنْ تَصِيرَا شَاعِرَيْنِ إِذَا لَمْ تُوَاظِبَا عَلَى الْمِرَانِ .

هـ – لَا تَنْقَطِعِي عَنِ الْمِرَانِ .

و – أَرْجُو أَنْ تَنْظِمِي قَصِيدَةً جَدِيدَةً .

3. Put لَمْ before each of the verbs in the following sentences. Make any necessary changes.

ا – أَنْتُمَا تَذْهَبَانِ إِلَى الْمَطَارِ .

ب – اَلصَّيَّادُونَ يَصِيدُونَ السَّمَكَ .

ج – أَنْتُمْ تُمَثِّلُونَ عَلَى مَسْرَحِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ .

د – الْأَصْدِقَاءُ يُوَدِّعُونَ الْمُسَافِرِينَ .

هـ – أَنْتِ تَنْظِمِينَ الشِّعْرَ .

4. Omit the subjunctive or jussive particle that precedes each of the verbs in the following sentences. Make any necessary changes.

ا – لَا تَخَافِي يَاسَيِّدَتِي ، وَلَا تَبْكِي .

ب – لَمْ يَلْبَسُوا مَلَابِسَ الْفَلَّاحِينَ .

ج – يَا إِلْهَامُ لَنْ تَتْعَبِي مِنَ الْحَرِّ .

د – لَا تَشْتَرُوا الْأَقْلَامَ الرَّخِيصَةَ .

هـ – لَنْ تَكُونَا شَاعِرَيْنِ .

الدَّرْسُ الثَّامِنُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Eight

نَهْضَةُ الْمَرْأَةِ

The Rise of Women

كَانَتِ النِّسَاءُ لَا يَعْرِفْنَ غَيْرَ بُيُوتِهِنَّ .

Women did not know (anything) except their homes.

يُنَظِّفْنَ الْحُجُرَاتِ ، وَيُرَتِّبْنَ الْأَثَاثَ ،

They used to clean the rooms, arrange the furniture,

وَيَغْسِلْنَ الْمَلَابِسَ ، وَيَطْبُخْنَ الطَّعَامَ .

wash (the) clothes, and cook (the) food .

وَالْيَوْمَ تَنَالُ النِّسَاءُ حَظَّهُنَّ مِنَ التَّعْلِيمِ ،

Today women get their share of education,

وَيَنْهَضْنَ بِفَضْلِ التَّعْلِيمِ نَهْضَةً مُبَارَكَةً ،

and, thanks to education, they achieve a blessed revival.

وَيُشَارِكْنَ الرِّجَالَ فِي بِنَاءِ الْوَطَنِ ،

They share with men the building of the country,

وَيَعْمَلْنَ فِي كُلِّ مَيْدَانٍ .

and work in every field.

فَهُنَّ الْيَوْمَ يَشْغَلْنَ الْوَظَائِفَ الْعَامَّةَ ،

Today they hold public offices,

وَيَعْمَلْنَ فِي الْمَصَانِعِ وَالْمَزَارِعِ وَالشَّرِكَاتِ ،

work in factories, farms and firms,

وَيُقَدِّمْنَ بَرَامِجَ الرَّادْيُو وَالتِّلِيفِزْيُونِ ،

present radio and television programmes,

وَيُدَرِّسْنَ فِي الْمَدَارِسِ وَالْجَامِعَاتِ .

and teach in schools and universities.

وَلَا يَقْتَصِرُ دَوْرُ النِّسَاءِ عَلَى أَيَّامِ السِّلْمِ ،

Women's role is not confined to days of peace,

فَهُنَّ يَقُمْنَ فِي زَمَنِ الْحَرْبِ بِدَوْرٍ عَظِيمٍ :

for they play an important role in time of war:

يُسْعِفْنَ الْجَرْحَى فِي الْمَيْدَانِ ،

They help the wounded in the battle - field,

وَيُعَالِجْنَ الْمَرْضَى فِي الْمُسْتَشْفَيَاتِ ،

treat the sick in hospitals,

وَقَدْ يَشْتَرِكْنَ فِي الْقِتَالِ .

and may take part in fighting.

يَا بَنَاتِ الْوَطَنِ ! أَنْتُنَّ تَخْدُمْنَ الْوَطَنَ وَتُشَارِكْنَ الرِّجَالَ فِي بِنَائِهِ
وَتَعْمَلْنَ فِي كُلِّ مَيْدَانٍ .

Oh daughters of (this) country !
You serve the country, share with men (the task of) building it ,
and work in every field.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

(١) اَلنِّسَاءُ يُشَارِكْنَ الرِّجَالَ فِي بِنَاءِ الْوَطَنِ ،
وَيَعْمَلْنَ فِي الْمَصَانِعِ وَالْمَزَارِعِ وَالشَّرِكَاتِ .

Each of these sentences contains a present-tense verb; it is (يُشَارِكْ) in the first sentence, and (يَعْمَلْ) in the second. The (نُونٌ) suffixed to each verb is a pronoun indicating the feminine plural. This نُونٌ is called the (نُونُ) of the feminine plural (نُونُ النِّسْوَةِ). Note that the last letter of each verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ): (اَلْكَافُ) in the verb (يُشَارِكْ) and (اَللاَّمُ) in the verb (يَعْمَلْ). Note also that each verb refers to the third person feminine plural; the present - tense prefix is therefore (اَلْيَاءُ).

(٢) أَنْتُنَّ تَخْدُمْنَ الْوَطَنَ .

The present-tense verb in this sentence is (تَخْدُمْنَ). Since the (نُون) of the feminine plural is suffixed to it, its last letter is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ). It refers to the second person feminine plural and, therefore, the verbal prefix is (اَلتَّاءُ).

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Underline the verbs to which the (نُون) of the feminine plural is suffixed in the following sentences:

ا – كَانَتِ النِّسَاءُ لَا يَعْرِفْنَ غَيْرَ بُيُوتِهِنَّ .

ب – يُنَظِّفْنَ الْحُجُرَاتِ وَيُرَتِّبْنَ الْأَثَاثَ ،

ج – وَيَغْسِلْنَ الْمَلَابِسَ وَيَطْبُخْنَ الطَّعَامَ .

د – النِّسَاءُ يَنْهَضْنَ بِفَضْلِ التَّعْلِيمِ ،

ه – وَيَعْمَلْنَ فِي كُلِّ مَيْدَانٍ .

2. Fill in each of the following blanks with a suitable verb chosen from those in brackets:

(يَشْتَرِكْنَ – يُقَدِّمْنَ – يَشْغَلْنَ – يَقُمْنَ – يُسْعِفْنَ)

ا – هُنَّ الْيَوْمَ . . . . . الْوَظَائِفَ الْعَامَّةَ .

ب – وَهُنَّ . . . . . فِي زَمَنِ الْحَرْبِ بِدَوْرٍ عَظِيمٍ ،

ج – وَقَدْ . . . . . فِي الْقِتَالِ .

د – . . . . . الْجَرْحَى فِي الْمَيْدَانِ .

ه – . . . . . بَرَامِجَ الرَّادْيُو وَالتِّلِيفِزْيُونِ .

3. Suffix the (نُون) of the feminine plural to each of the following verbs. Then put each verb in its appropriate place in the following sentences:

(يَسْمَعُ – يُكَرِّرُ – يَقْرَأُ – يُرَاجِعُ – يَتَعَلَّمُ)

ا – كَثِيرٌ مِنَ السَّيِّدَاتِ . . . . . اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ بِالرَّادْيُو .

ب – هُنَّ . . . . . الْكُتُبَ ،

جـ – وَ . . . . . الْمُدَرِّسَ فِي الرَّادْيُو ،

د – وَ . . . . . نُطْقَ الْكَلِمَاتِ وَالْجُمَلِ وَرَاءَهُ ،

هـ – وَ . . . . . الدُّرُوسَ .

4· Replace أَنْتِ by أَنْتُنَّ in the following, making any necessary changes :

أَنْتِ تَذْهَبِينَ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَتَتَعَلَّمِينَ ، وَفِي الْمُسْتَقْبَلِ تَخْدُمِينَ الْوَطَنَ .

اَلدَّرْسُ التَّاسِعُ وَالثَّمَانُونَ

Lesson Eighty-Nine

دَرْسٌ وَعَمَلٌ

Study and Work

قَالَ الْوَالِدُ لِأَحْمَدَ :

The father said to Ahmad,

هَلْ قَرَأْتَ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ يَا أَحْمَدُ ؟

" Have you read today's lessons, Ahmad ?

وَهَلْ رَاجَعْتَ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ ؟

And have *you* revised the previous lessons ?"

أَحْمَدُ : نَعَمْ يَا أَبِي .

Ahmad : " Yes, father.

قَرَأْتُ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ ، وَرَاجَعْتُ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ .

I have read today's lessons, and revised the previous lessons. "

اَلْوَالِدُ : وَأَنْتِ يَاسَمِيرَةُ ، هَلْ قَرَأْتِ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ ؟

The father : " And you, Samira, have you read today's lessons

وَهَلْ رَاجَعْتِ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ ؟

and have you revised the previous lessons ? "

سَمِيرَةُ : نَعَمْ يَاأَبِى ، قَرَأْتُ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ وَرَاجَعْتُ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ .

Samira : " Yes, father, I have read today's lessons and revised the previous lessons . "

اَلْوَالِدُ : أَنْتُمَا مُجْتَهِدَانِ ، قَرَأْتُمَا الدُّرُوسَ الْجَدِيدَةَ ، وَرَاجَعْتُمَا الدُّرُوسَ الْمَاضِيَةَ .

The father : " You two are hard workers; you have read the new lessons and revised the previous lessons.

وَلَكِنْ مَا النَّشَاطُ الَّذِى اشْتَرَكْتُمَا فِيهِ ؟

But what (other) activity have you taken part in ? "

أَحْمَدُ : أَعْدَدْنَا الْيَوْمَ صَحِيفَةَ الْحَائِطِ ، وَعَلَّقْنَاهَا فِى الْفَصْلِ .

Ahmad : " Today we prepared the wall paper and hung it in the classroom."

سَمِيرَةُ : نَحْنُ صَنَعْنَا فَطِيرَةً لَذِيذَةً وَأَكَلْنَاهَا .

Samira : "We made a delicious cake and ate it.

وَسُرِرْنَا كَثِيرًا لِأَنَّهَا مِنْ صُنْعِ أَيْدِينَا .

We were very pleased because we made it with our own hands. "

اَلْوَالِدُ : هَذَا جَمِيلٌ ، وَلَكِنْ هَلْ صَنَعْتِ الْفَطِيرَةَ وَحْدَكِ ؟

The father : " That's good, but did you make the cake by yourself ? "

سَمِيرَةُ : لَا ، تَعَاوَنَتْ فِى عَمَلِهَا ثَلَاثُ طَالِبَاتٍ :

Samira : " No, three girl students cooperated in making it.

اِثْنَتَانِ عَجَنَتَا الدَّقِيقَ ، وَصَنَعَتَا الْفَطِيرَةَ .

Two kneaded the flour (dough) and made the cake.

وَأَنَا تَسَلَّمْتُهَا ، وَأَنْضَجْتُهَا فِي الْفُرْنِ .

I took it and cooked it in the oven.

وَكُلُّ ثَلَاثِ طَالِبَاتٍ وَزَّعْنَ الْعَمَلَ بَيْنَهُنَّ ،

Every three students distributed the work among themselves

وَصَنَعْنَ فَطِيرَةً مِثْلَنَا .

and made a cake like us. "

اَلْوَالِدُ : عَرَفْتُ الآنَ كَيْفَ وَزَّعْتُنَّ الْعَمَلَ وَصَنَعْتُنَّ الْفَطِيرَةَ .

The father : " Now I know how you distributed the work and made the cake.

وَأَنْتَ يَا أَحْمَدُ ، كَيْفَ أَخْرَجْتُمُ الصَّحِيفَةَ ؟

And you, Ahmad, how did you produce the paper ? "

أَحْمَدُ : اِشْتَرَكْنَا فِي عَمَلِهَا كَمَا اشْتَرَكَتِ الطَّالِبَاتُ فِي صُنْعِ الْفَطِيرَةِ.

Ahmad : " We cooperated in producing it just as the girl students cooperated in making the cake.

عَادِلٌ وَأَكْرَمُ أَحْضَرَا الصُّوَرَ ، وَقَسَّمَا الصَّحِيفَةَ ، وَرَسَمَا الرُّسُومَ .

Adel and Akram brought the pictures, set the paper into sections and made the drawings.

وَخَمْسَةٌ مِنَ الزُّمَلَاءِ جَمَعُوا مَادَّةَ الصَّحِيفَةِ ؛

Five classmates collected the material for the paper;

قَرَأُوا وَاخْتَارُوا وَ كَتَبُوا مَا أَرَادُوا .

they read, selected and wrote what they wanted to.

وَأَنَا كَتَبْتُ قِصَّةَ الْعَدَدِ .

I wrote the story of the issue. »

اَلْوَالِدُ : هَذَا جَمِيلٌ . تَعَلَّمْتُمْ شَيْئاً يَنْفَعُكُمْ . وَتَعَوَّدْتُمُ التَّعَاوُنَ فِي الْعَمَلِ .

The father : « That's good. You have learnt something that is useful for you, and got used to cooperation in work. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

In the previous lessons you learnt the separate personal pronouns. They are:

أَنَا نَحْنُ أَنْتَ أَنْتِ أَنْتُمَا أَنْتُمْ أَنْتُنَّ هُوَ هِيَ
هُمَا هُمْ هُنَّ

This lesson presents the pronominal suffixes of the past-tense verb.

1. In the sentence:

هَلْ قَرَأْتَ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ يَا أَحْمَدُ ؟

the pronominal suffix (تَ) of the second person masculine singular is suffixed to the verb (قَرَأَ) .

Note that (اَلْهَمْزَةُ), the final consonant of the verb, is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : (قَرَأَ) .

2. In the sentence:

هَلْ قَرَأْتِ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ يَا سَمِيرَةُ ؟

the pronominal suffix (تِ) of the second person feminine singular is suffiixed to the verb (قَرَأَ). Note that (اَلْهَمْزَةُ) , the final consonant of the verb, is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : (قَرَأَ) .

3. In the sentence:

قَرَأْتُمَا الدُّرُوسَ الْجَدِيدَةَ .

the pronominal suffix of the second person dual, masculine or feminine, is suffixed to the verb (قَرَأَ) . Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) : (قَرَأَ) .

4. In the sentence:

كَيْفَ أَخْرَجْتُمُ الصَّحِيفَةَ ؟

the pronominal suffix (تُمْ) of the second person masculine plural is suffixed

to the verb (أَخْرَجَ). Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : (أَخْرَجَ) .

5. In the sentence:

صَنَعْتُنَّ الْفَطِيرَةَ .

the pronominal suffix (تُنَّ) of the second person feminine plural is suffixed to the verb (صَنَعَ) . Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : (صَنَعَ) .

6. In the sentence:

قَرَأْتُ دُرُوسَ الْيَوْمِ .

the pronominal suffix (تُ) of the first person singular, masculine or feminine, is suffixed to the verb (قَرَأَ) . Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : (قَرَأَ) .

7.

عَلَّقْنَا الصَّحِيفَةَ فِي الْفَصْلِ . صَنَعْنَا فَطِيرَةً .

The pronominal suffix (نَا) of the first person plural is suffixed to the verb (عَلَّقَ) in the first sentence, and to the verb (صَنَعَ) in the second sentence. The pronominal suffix in the first sentence refers to the masculine and in the second sentence to the feminine, without distinction in gender.

Note that the final consonant of the verb to which the suffix (نَا) is suffixed is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : صَنَعَ – عَلَّقَ .

8. In the sentence:

كُلُّ ثَلَاثِ طَالِبَاتٍ وَزَّعْنَ الْعَمَلَ بَيْنَهُنَّ .

the pronominal suffix (نَ) of the third person feminine plural is suffixed to the verb (وَزَّعَ) . This (نَ) is called the nun of the feminine plural

Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) instead of its original (فَتْحَةٌ) : وَزَّعَ

9. If the past-tense verb has the *pronominal* suffixes of the second person (تُنَّ تُمْ تُمَا تِ تَ) , the pronominal suffix of the first person *singular* (تُ) , the pronominal suffix of the first person plural (نَا) , or the *nun* of the feminine plural (نَ) ، the last consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) .

10.

عَادِلٌ وَأَكْرَمُ أَخْضَرَا الصُّوَرَ . اِثْنَتَانِ عَجَنَتَا الدَّقِيقَ .

In the first sentence 'the alif of the two' (أَلِفُ الاِثْنَيْنِ) is suffixed *to the* verb (أَخْضَرَ) . Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) as before the suffixation of the (أَلِفٌ) .

Note that the original form of the verb (عَجَنَتَا) in the second sentence was (عَجَنَتْ) ending with the (تْ) of the feminine, and then the alif of the two was suffixed to it. Note *also* that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلْفَتْحَةُ)as before the suffixation of the (أَلِفُ). But the (تِ) of the feminine which is normally marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) is here marked with (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) because of the suffixed (أَلِفٌ) .

11. In the sentence:

خَمْسَةٌ مِنَ الزُّمَلَاءِ جَمَعُوا مَادَّةَ الصَّحِيفَةِ

you find that the pronominal suffix, the 'waw' of the masculine *plural* (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) is suffixed to the verb (جَمَعَ) .

Note that the final consonant of the verb is marked with (اَلضَّمَّةُ) instead of the original(فَتْحَةٌ) : جَمَعَ

A spelling rule:

When the waw of the plural (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) is suffixed to a past-tense verb it is followed by an alif (أَلِفٌ) in writing : (وُا) .

12. All these pronominal suffixes act as subjects of the verbs to which they are suffixed. They are therefore called the nominative pronominal suffixes (ضَمَائِرُ الرَّفْعِ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ) .

Remarks	Example	Corresponding pronominal suffix of the past.	Person	Separate pronoun
The final consonant of the verb is marked with السُّكُون	كَتَبْتُ	تُ	First person singular (masculine or feminine)	أَنَا
« « « « «	كَتَبْنَا	نَا	First person plural (masculine or feminine)	نَحْنُ
« « « « «	كَتَبْتَ	تَ	Second person masculine singular	أَنْتَ
« « « « «	كَتَبْتِ	تِ	Second person feminine singular	أَنْتِ
« « « « «	كَتَبْتُمَا	تُمَا	Second person dual (masculine or feminine)	أَنْتُمَا
« « « « «	كَتَبْتُمْ	تُمْ	Second person masculine plural	أَنْتُمْ
« « « « «	كَتَبْتُنَّ	تُنَّ	Second person feminine plural	أَنْتُنَّ
the final letter of the verb is marked with الفَتْحَة	كَتَبَ		Third person masculine singular	هُوَ
« « « « «	كَتَبَتْ		Third person feminine singular	هِيَ
The final letter remains marked with الفَتْحَة	كَتَبَا	ا	Third person masculine dual	هُمَا
« « « « «	كَتَبَتَا	ا	Third person feminine dual	هُمَا
The final letter of the verb is marked with الضَّمَّة	كَتَبُوا	وا	Third person masculine plural	هُمْ
The final letter of the verb is marked with السُّكُون	كَتَبْنَ	نَ	Third person feminine plural	هُنَّ

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Indicate the pronominal suffixes of the past-tense verbs in the following sentences. State the person to which each suffix refers :

ا – هَلْ رَاجَعْتَ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ ؟

ب – نَعَمْ ، رَاجَعْتُ الدُّرُوسَ السَّابِقَةَ .

جـ – مَا النَّشَاطُ الَّذِى اشْتَرَكْتُمَا فِيهِ ؟

د – ثَلَاثُ طَالِبَاتٍ صَنَعْنَ الْفَطِيرَةَ .

هـ – عَرَفْتُ الْآنَ كَيْفَ وَزَّعْتُنَّ الْعَمَلَ ، وَصَنَعْتُنَّ الْفَطِيرَةَ .

و – اشْتَرَكْنَا فِي عَمَلِ الصَّحِيفَةِ .

ز – كَتَبُوا مَا أَرَادُوا .

2. Put the verbs in brackets in their appropriate places in the following sentences . Attach a suitable pronominal suffix to each verb.

(قَسَّمَ – كَتَبَ – قَرَأَ – صَنَعَ – رَسَمَ – أَرَادَ)

ا – أَنْتُمَا مُجْتَهِدَانِ . . . . . الدُّرُوسَ الْجَدِيدَةَ .

ب – نَحْنُ . . . . . الْفَطِيرَةَ .

جـ – عَادِلٌ وَأَكْرَمُ . . . . . الصَّحِيفَةَ وَ . . . . . الرُّسُوم .

د – هُم كَتَبُوا مَا . . . . . وأَنَا . . . . . قِصَّةَ الْعَدَدِ .

3. Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs stating the pronominal suffix in each:

ا – أَنَا . . . . . الْخِطَابَ وَ . . . . . طَابَعَ الْبَرِيدِ عَلَيْهِ .

ب – نَحْنُ . . . . . إِلَى أَسْوَانَ .

جـ – هُمْ . . . . . صَحِيفَةَ الْحَائِطِ .

د – هُنَّ . . . . . الْفَطِيرَةَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ .

هـ – أَنْتُمْ . . . . . شَيْئاً يَنْفَعُكُمْ فِي حَيَاتِكُمْ .

4. Address the following sentences to the feminine singular, and then to the masculine plural:

أَنْتَ ذَهَبْتَ إِلَى الْجِيزَةِ ، وَشَاهَدْتَ الأَهْرَامَ .

5. هُمَا حَضَرَا إِلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ وَشَاهَدَا الآثَارَ .

(a) Replace the pronoun (هُمَا) with the pronoun (هُمْ) and write the sentence correctly.

(b) Replace the pronoun (هُمَا) with the pronoun (هُنَّ), and write the sentence correctly.

اَلدَّرْسُ التِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety

فِي الْعَمَلِ جُهْدٌ وَصَبْرٌ

There is Effort and Patience in Work

قَالَ الْفَلَّاحُ لِابْنِهِ :

The farmer said to his son,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِي الْحَقْلِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ.

" There is much work (to do) in the field; work requires effort and patience.

اُحْرُثْ أَرْضَنَا ، وَقَسِّمْهَا إِلَى أَحْوَاضٍ أَوْ خُطُوطٍ .

Plough our land and divide it into beds or lines.

وَابْذُرْ فِيهَا الْحَبَّ وَضَعْ فِيهَا السِّمَادَ .

Sow the seeds and put the manure in it.

وَدَاوِمْ عَلَى سَقْيِ الزَّرْعِ فِي مَوَاعِيدِهِ .

Keep watering the plants at the appropriate times. "

وَقَالَتِ الْأُمُّ لِابْنَتِهَا :

The mother said to her daughter,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِى الْبَيْتِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ .

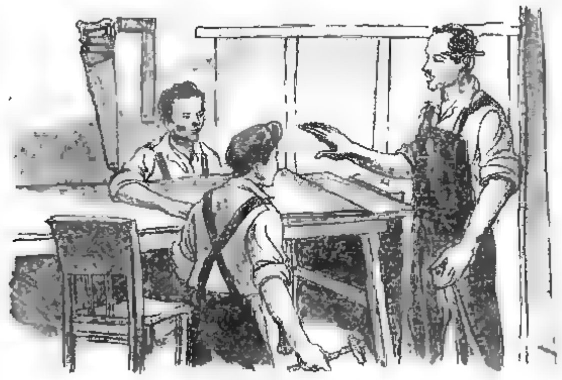
" There is much work (to do) in the house; work requires effort and patience.

اِفْتَحِى النَّوَافِذَ لِتَجْدِيدِ الْهَوَاءِ فِى الْبَيْتِ ، وَنَظِّفِى الْحُجُرَاتِ ،

Open the windows to air the house, clean the rooms,

وَرَتِّبِى الْأَسِرَّةَ ، وَنَظِّمِى حُجْرَةَ الْجُلُوسِ .

make the beds, and put the sitting-room in order. "



وَقَالَ النَّجَّارُ لِغُلَامَيْهِ :

The carpenter said to his two apprentices,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِى الدُّكَّانِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ .

" There is much work (to do) in the shop; work requires effort and patience.

أُنْشُرَا الْخَشَبَ بِالْمِنْشَارِ ، وَأَلْصِقَا الْأَلْوَاحَ بِالْغِرَاءِ ،

Saw (you two) the wood with the saw, stick the boards with glue

وَدُقَّا الْمَسَامِيرَ بِالْقَدُومِ .

and drive the nails with the hammer. "

وَقَالَتْ رَبَّةُ الْبَيْتِ لِخَادِمَتَيْهَا :

The housewife said to her two maids,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ .

" There is much work (to do) in the kitchen; work requires effort and patience.

اغْسِلَا الْأَطْبَاقَ وَالْأَوَانِيَ ، وَنَظِّفَا الْخُضَرَ ،

Wash (you two) the plates and the vessels, clean the vegetables,

وَقَطِّعَا اللَّحْمَ قِطَعًا ، وَأَعِدَّا الْمِلْحَ وَالسَّمْنَ وَالتَّوَابِلَ ،

cut the meat into pieces, get the salt, the butter and the spices ready,

وَرَاقِبَا الطَّعَامَ عَلَى الْمَوْقِدِ حَتَّى يَنْضَجَ .

and watch the food on the stove until it is cooked."

وَقَالَ مُدِيرُ الْمَتْجَرِ لِلْعُمَّالِ :

The shop manager said to the workers,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِي الْمَتْجَرِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ .

"There is much work (to do) in the shop; work requires effort and patience.

اسْتَقْبِلُوا الزَّبَائِنَ بِبَشَاشَةٍ ، وَاعْرِضُوا عَلَيْهِمِ الْبَضَائِعَ فِي سُرُورٍ ،

Receive the customers with a smile, present the goods to them pleasantly,

وَعَامِلُوهُمْ بِالذَّوْقِ وَالْأَدَبِ ، وَلَا تَغُشُّوهُمْ ،

treat them nicely and politely, and do not cheat them;

فَالرَّسُولُ يَقُولُ : مَنْ غَشَّنَا فَلَيْسَ مِنَّا .

the prophet says, «Whoever cheats us is not one of us.»."

وَقَالَتْ مُدَرِّسَةُ التَّدْبِيرِ الْمَنْزِلِيِّ لِطَالِبَاتِهَا :

The domestic-science teacher said to her girl students,

اَلْعَمَلُ فِي حِصَّةِ التَّدْبِيرِ كَثِيرٌ ؛ اَلْعَمَلُ مُحْتَاجٌ إِلَى جُهْدٍ وَصَبْرٍ .

" There is much work (to do) in the domestic-science hour; work requires effort and patience.

أَحْضِرْنَ النَّسِيجَ ، وَاضْبِطْنَ الْقِيَاسَ .

Fetch the material, take accurate measurements,

وَاقْصُصْنَ النَّسِيجَ بِالْمِقَصِّ ، وَخِطْنَهُ بِالْإِبْرَةِ .

cut the material with the scissors, and sew it with the needle. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. اُحْرُثْ أَرْضَنَا . اُبْذُرْ فِيهَا الْحَبَّ .

The verb (اُحْرُثْ) in the first sentence, and the verb (اُبْذُرْ) in the second are imperatives. Since the order is given to the masculine singular, no explicit pronominal suffix is appended to the verb.

Note that the last letter of the verb is marked with (اَلسُّكُونُ) .

2. نَظِّفِي الْحُجُرَاتِ . رَتِّبِي الأَسِرَّةَ .

The verb (نَظِّفِي) in the first sentence, and the verb (رَتِّبِي) in the second are imperatives. Since the order is given to the feminine singular, each verb ends with the pronominal suffix (أَلْيَاءُ) called the (يَاء) of the second person feminine singular (يَاءُ الْمُخَاطَبَةِ). This (يَاء) is the subject of the verb.

3. اُنْشُرَا الْخَشَبَ . اِغْسِلَا الأَطْبَاقَ .

Since the order is given to the masculine dual in the first sentence and to the feminine dual in the second, the dual pronominal suffix - 'the alif of the two' (أَلِفُ الاثْنَيْنِ) - is suffixed to the verbs (اُنْشُرْ) and (اِغْسِلْ). This alif is the subject of the verb. Note that no difference in gender is indicated.

4. اِسْتَقْبِلُوا الزَّبَائِنَ بِبَشَاشَةٍ . اِعْرِضُوا الْبَضَائِعَ فِي سُرُورٍ .

Since the order is given to the masculine plural, the 'waw' of the masculine plural (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) is suffixed to the verb (اِسْتَقْبِلْ) in the first sentence and to the verb (اِعْرِضْ) in the second. This (وَاو) is the subject of the verb.

5. أَحْضِرْنَ النَّسِيجَ . اِضْبِطْنَ الْقِيَاسَ .

Since the order is given to the feminine plural, the (نُون) of the feminine plural (نُونُ النِّسْوَةِ) is suffixed to the verb (أَحْضِرْ) in the first sentence and the verb (اِضْبِطْ) in the second. This (نُونٌ) is the subject of the verb. The final consonant of the imperative is marked with(اَلسُّكُونُ) .

6. The pronominal suffixes of the imperative are:

يَاءُ الْمُخَاطَبَةِ أَلِفُ الاِثْنَيْنِ

وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ نُونُ النِّسْوَةِ

They are the subjects of the verb.

Table of the nominative pronominal suffixes of the present and imperative verbs

The verb ending with (نون النسوة)	The verb ending with (ياءُالمخاطبة)	The verb ending with (واو الجَماعة)	The verb ending with (أَلف الاثنين)	Tense	Verb
يَشْكُرْنَ (3rd person)	ـ	يَشْكُرُونَ (3rd person)	يَشْكُرَانِ (3rd person masc.)	مُضَارِعٌ	يَشْكُرُ
تَشْكُرْنَ (2nd person)	تَشْكُرِينَ (2nd person)	تَشْكُرُونَ (2nd person)	تَشْكُرَانِ (3 rd person fem. or 2nd person masc.)		
اُشْكُرْنَ	اُشْكُرِى	اُشْكُرُوا	اُشْكُرَا	أَمْرٌ	اُشْكُرْ

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the imperative verb and its pronominal suffix in each of the following sentences:

ا — اِفْتَحِي النَّوَافِذَ لِتَجْدِيدِ الْهَوَاءِ .
ب — اِفْتَحْنَ النَّوَافِذَ لِيَدْخُلَ ضَوْءُ الشَّمْسِ .
ج — أَلْصِقَا الْخَشَبَ بِالْغِرَاءِ .
د — عَامِلُوا الزَّبَائِنَ بِالذَّوْقِ والْأَدَبِ .
هـ — قَطِّعَا اللَّحْمَ قِطَعًا .

2. Fill in the blanks with suitable imperative verbs:

ا — . . . . . . حُجْرَةَ الْجُلُوسِ .
ب — . . . . . . الْمَسَامِيرَ بِالْقَدُومِ .
ج — . . . . . . الطَّعَامَ عَلَى الْمَوْقِدِ حَتَّى يَنْضَجَ .
د — . . . . . . النَّسِيجَ بِالْمِقَصِّ .

3. (a) Address this order to the dual :

« اِفْتَحْ دَلِيلَ التِّلِيفُونِ »

(b) Address this order to the feminine plural :

« تَعَلَّمِ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ »

(c) Address this order to the masculine plural :

« سَافِرْ إِلَى أُسْوَانَ »

4. Address these orders to the masculine dual, and then to the masculine plural:

اُحْرُثِ الْأَرْضَ ، وَابْذُرِ الْحَبَّ ، وَدَاوِمْ عَلَى سَقْيِ الزَّرْعِ .

5. Address these orders to the feminine singular, and then to the feminine plural:

نَظِّفَا الْخُضَرَ ، وَقَطِّعَا اللَّحْمَ قِطَعاً ، وَرَاقِبَا الطَّعَامَ عَلَى الْمَوْقِدِ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الْحَادِى وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety - One

نَصَائِحُ

Bits of Advice

قَالَ الْفَلَّاحُ لِابْنِهِ فِى مَوْسِمِ الْحَصَادِ :

In the harvest season the farmer said to his son,

إِنَّ مَحْصُولَنَا وَفِيرٌ . تَعِبْنَا كَثِيرًا ، فَكَسَبْنَا كَثِيرًا .

" Our crop is plentiful; we have worked hard, and so we have gained much.

إِنْ تَزْرَعْ تَحْصُدْ ، وَإِنْ تَتْعَبْ تَكْسِبْ .

If you sow you reap, and if you work hard you gain. "

قَالَ الْوَلَدُ :

The boy said,

نَعَمْ يَا أَبِى . إِنْ زَرَعَ الْفَلَّاحُ حَصَدَ ، وَإِنْ تَعِبَ كَسَبَ .

" Yes, father. If the farmer sows he reaps, and if he works hard he gains. "

وَقَالَتِ الْفَلَّاحَةُ لِابْنَتِهَا :

The woman farmer said to her daughter,

لَا تُهْمِلِي الْعِنَايَةَ بِالدَّجَاجِ .

" Do not neglect looking after the hens.

مَتَى تَهْتَمِّي بِهِ يَكْثُرْ بَيْضُهُ ، وَمَتَى أَهْمَلْتِهِ قَلَّ بَيْضُهُ .

Whenever you take care of them, they lay many eggs; but whenever you neglect them, they lay few eggs."

قَالَتِ الْبِنْتُ :

The daughter said,

وَمَتَى يَكْثُرِ الْبَيْضُ تَكْثُرِ الْفِرَاخُ . وَمَتَى قَلَّ الْبَيْضُ قَلَّتِ الْفِرَاخُ .

" And whenever there is plenty of eggs, there is plenty of chicken. Whenever the eggs are few, the chicken are few. "

وَقَالَ الصَّانِعُ لِلصَّبِيَّيْنِ اللَّذَيْنِ يَعْمَلَانِ عِنْدَهُ :

The craftsman said to the two apprentices who work at his place,

هَذِهِ آلَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ حَافِظَا عَلَيْهَا .

" This is a new machine ; take care of it.

إِنْ تُحَافِظَا عَلَيْهَا تُوَفِّرَا كَثِيرًا مِنَ الْجُهْدِ وَالْوَقْتِ .

If you take care of it, you save much effort and time. "

قَالَ الصَّبِيَّانِ :

The two apprentices said,

نَعَمْ ، مَتَى صَانَ الصَّانِعُ آلَتَهُ كَانَتْ دَائِماً فِي خِدْمَتِهِ .

" Yes. If the craftsman maintains his machine, it will always be at his service. "

وَقَالَ الْمُدَرِّسُ لِتَلاَمِيذِهِ :

The teacher said to his pupils,

مَنِ اجْتَهَدَ مِنْكُمْ نَجَحَ . وَمَنْ أَهْمَلَ دُرُوسَهُ رَسَبَ .

" Whoever of you works hard succeeds, and whoever neglects his lessons fails.

وَمَا تَتَعَلَّمُوا فِي الصِّغَرِ يَنْفَعْ فِي الْكِبَرِ .

Whatever you learn when you are young becomes useful when you get old.

مَنْ يَنْجَحْ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ يَنْجَحْ فِي الْحَيَاةِ .

Whoever succeeds at school succeeds in life. "

قَالَ التَّلاَمِيذُ :

The pupils said,

نَعَمْ ، مَنْ يَجْتَهِدْ يَنْجَحْ ، وَمَنْ يُهْمِلْ دُرُوسَهُ يَرْسُبْ فِي الامْتِحَانِ .

" Yes, whoever works hard succeeds, and whoever neglects his lessons fails the examination. "

وَفِي الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ :

The Holy Koran says,

« وَمَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمْهُ اللّٰهُ » (البقرة ١٩٧)

" And whatever of good you do, God knoweth it. "

« وَمَا تُقَدِّمُوا لِأَنْفُسِكُمْ مِنْ خَيْرٍ تَجِدُوهُ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ » (البقرة ١١٠)

" And whatever good you send before for your own souls, ye shall find it with God. "

« أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكْكُمُ الْمَوْتُ » (النساء ٧٨)

" Wheresoever ye be, death will overtake you. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES ## اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. (a) إِنْ تَزْرَعْ تَحْصُدْ .

(إِنْ) is a conditional particle. (تَزْرَعْ) is the verb of condition (protasis) (فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ) , and (تَحْصُدْ) is the answer of condition (apodosis) (جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ) .

Note that both the protasis and apodosis are in the present tense. They are in the jussive mood indicated here by(اَلسُّكُونُ) on the final consonant.

(b) إِنْ تُحَافِظَا عَلَيْهَا تُوَفِّرَا كَثِيراً مِنَ الْجُهْدِ وَالْوَقْتِ.

(إِنْ) is a conditional particle . (تُحَافِظَا) is the protasis, and (تُوَفِّرَا) is the apodosis.

Note that both verbs are in the present tense. Note also that they belong to the group of the five verbs (اَلْأَفْعَالُ الْخَمْسَةُ) . They are in the jussive mood indicated here by the omission of the original nun (اَلنُّونُ) .

(c) When the protasis or the apodosis is a present-tense verb, it is in the jussive mood. This mood is indicated by(اَلسُّكُونُ) in the first sentence (a), and by the omission of the nun in the second (b).

2. إِنْ زَرَعَ الْفَلَّاحُ حَصَدَ .

(إِنْ) is a conditional particle. (زَرَعَ) is the protasis and (حَصَدَ) is the apodosis.

Note that both verbs are in the past tense. Note also that their use in the conditional sentence has not caused them any change.

3. Condition can also be expressed by:

(Whoever) (أ) مَنْ

مَنْ يَجْتَهِدْ يَنْجَحْ – مَنِ اجْتَهَدَ نَجَحَ .

In the first sentence the protasis (يَجْتَهِدْ) and the apodosis (يَنْجَحْ) are in the jussive mood because they are present-tense verbs. The jussive mood is here indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ).

In the second sentence the protasis (اجْتَهَدَ) and the apodosis (نَجَحَ) are past-tense verbs and have therefore not undergone any change.

(Whatever) (ب) مَا

مَا تَتَعَلَّمُوا فِي الصِّغَرِ يَنْفَعْ فِي الْكِبَرِ .

The protasis (تَتَعَلَّمُوا) is in the jussive mood indicated here by the omission of (اَلنُّونُ). The apodosis (يَنْفَعْ) is also in the jussive mood indicated here by (اَلسُّكُونُ) .

(Whenever) (جـ) مَتَى

مَتَى تَهْتَمَّ بِهِ يَكْثُرْ بَيْضُهُ – مَتَى أَهْمَلْتَهُ قَلَّ بَيْضُهُ.

In the first sentence, the protasis (تَهْتَمَّ) is in the jussive mood indicated by the omission of (اَلنُّونُ) . The apodosis (يَكْثُرْ) is also in the jussive mood indicated by (السُّكُونُ) .

In the second sentence, the protasis (أَهْمَلْتَ) and the apodosis (قَلَّ) are past-tense verbs.

(Wherever) (د) أَيْنَمَا

أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِككُّمُ الْمَوْتُ .

The protasis (تَكُونُوا) is in the jussive mood indicated by the omission of (اَلنُّونُ). The apodosis (يُدْرِكْ) is also in the jussive mood indicated by (اَلسُّكُونُ).

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the conditional particle, the protasis and the apodosis in each of the following sentences :

ا – إِنْ تَتْعَبْ تَكْسِبْ .

ب – مَتَى يَكْثُرِ الْبَيْضُ تَكْثُرِ الْفِرَاخُ .

جـ – مَنْ أَهْمَلَ دَرْسَهُ رَسَبَ .

د – مَتَى قَلَّ الْبَيْضُ قَلَّتِ الْفِرَاخُ .

هـ – إِنْ صَانَ الصَّانِعُ آلَتَهُ كَانَتْ دَائِمًا فِي خِدْمَتِهِ .

2. Indicate the sign of the jussive mood of both protasis and apodosis in the following sentences:

ا – مَنْ يُهْمِلْ دُرُوسَهُ يَرْسُبْ فِي الامْتِحَانِ .

ب – « وَمَا تَفْعَلُوا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَعْلَمْهُ اللّٰهُ »

جـ – « وَمَا تُقَدِّمُوا لأَنْفُسِكُمْ مِنْ خَيْرٍ تَجِدُوهُ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ »

د – إِنْ تَفْتَحْ نَوَافِذَ الْحُجْرَةِ يَدْخُلْ ضَوْءُ الشَّمْسِ .

3. Make both protasis and apodosis present-tense verbs and mark their endings:

ا – إِنْ تَعِبَ الْفَلَّاحُ كَسَبَ .

ب – مَنْ نَجَحَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ نَجَحَ فِي الْحَيَاةِ .

جـ – مَتَى كَثُرَ الْبَيْضُ كَثُرَتِ الْفِرَاخُ .

4. Use the following verbs in their appropriate places in the following sentences :

طَلَعَ – تَفْتَح – يُسَافِر – أَذْهَب .

ا – إِنْ . . . . . الدَّلِيلَ تَجِدْ رَقْمَ التِّلِيفُونِ .

ب ـ مَتَى . . . . . الْفَجْرُ أَذَّنَ الدِّيكُ .

جـ – مَنْ . . . . . فِي الطَّائِرَةِ يَصِلْ بِسُرْعَةٍ .

د – إِنْ . . . . . إِلَى الْجَامِعَةِ أَدْخُلْ كُلِّيَّةَ الطِّبِّ .

5. Put the following verbs in their appropriate places in the following sentences :

شَاهَدْتَ – يَعْرِف – أَتَعَلَّم .

ا – إِنْ أَقْرَأْ هَذَا الْكِتَابَ . . . . . الْعَرَبِيَّةَ .

ب – مَتَى زُرْتَ الْقَاهِرَةَ . . . . الْبُرْجَ .

جـ – مَنْ يَقْرَإِ الْجَرِيدَةَ . . . . الْأَخْبَارَ .

GLOSSARY

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
١٦	wells	آبَارٌ	ا
٣٧	(plant) diseases	آفَاتٌ	
١٦	machines	آلَاتٌ	
٢٣	instrument	آلَةٌ	
٨١	his machine	آلَتُهُ	
٧٢	sow (imperative masc. sing.)	اُبْذُرْ	
٧٥	needle	إِبْرَةٌ	
٨١	her daughter	ابْنَتُهَا	
٤٨	verses (of a poem)	أَبْيَاتٌ (القصيدة)	
٥٥	furniture	أَثَاثٌ	
٢٣	during	(فِي) أَثْنَاءِ	
٦٣	two (fem. dual)	اثْنَتَانِ	
٢٢	he answered him	أَجَابَهُ	
٤٩	meeting	اجْتِمَاعٌ	
٨٢	he worked hard	اجْتَهَدَ	
٧٢	plough (imperative masc. sing.)	اُحْرُثْ	
١	he brought	أَحْضَرَ	
١	it was brought	أُحْضِرَ	
٦٣	they (masc. dual) brought	أَحْضَرَا	
٧٥	fetch (imperative fem.pl.)	أَحْضِرْنَ	
٦١	Ahmad	أَحْمَدُ	
٧٢	beds (in a field)	أَحْوَاضٌ	
٦٤	they (masc.) selected	اخْتَارُوا	
٤٢	your (masc. sing.) sister	أُخْتُكَ	
٧	he took	أَخَذَ	
٦٣	you (masc. pl.) produced	أَخْرَجْتُمْ	
٢٣	producing	أَدَاءٌ	
١	instrument	أَدَاةٌ	
٣١	literature	أَدَبٌ	
٤٨	men of letters	أُدَبَاءُ	
٢٢	if	إِذَا	
٤٩	then	إِذَنْ	
٦٤	they (masc.) wanted	أَرَادُوا	
٧٢	our land	أَرْضُنَا	
٤٠	chisel	إِزْمِيلٌ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter	Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٧٤	exhibit (imperative masc. pl.)	اِعْرِضُوا		٧٤	receive (imperative masc. pl.)	اِسْتَقْبِلُوا	
٧٤	wash (imperative dual)	اِغْسِلَا		٧٣	beds	أَسِرَّةٌ	
٧٣	open (imperative fem. sing)	اِفْتَحِي		٣٠	Islam	إِسْلَامٌ	
٢٣	more or most capable	أَقْدَرُ		٣٧	(armed) forces	أَسْلِحَةٌ	
٧٥	cut (imperative-fem. pl.) (cloth)	اُقْصُصْنَ		١٦	black (masc. sing.)	أَسْوَدُ	
٦٣	Akram	أَكْرَمُ		٦٣	they (fem.) cooperated	اِشْتَرَكَتْ	
٦٢	we ate it (fem.)	أَكَلْنَاهَا		٦٢	you (dual) took part	اِشْتَرَكْتُمَا	
٣٠	except	إِلَّا		٦٣	we cooperated	اِشْتَرَكْنَا	
٢٤	I join	أَلْتَحِقُ بِـ		٣١	they (masc.) dealt (with)	اِشْتَغَلُوا (بِـ)	
٧٣	stick (imperative dual)	اِلْصِقَا		٤٨	hemistiches t	أَشْطُرٌ	
٩	he cast	أَلْقَى		٨	he caught	اِصْطَادَ	
٧٣	boards	أَلْوَاحٌ		٧	I go fishing	أَصْطَادُ	
١	colours	أَلْوَانٌ		٩	we caught	اِصْطَدْنَا	
٢٣	to it (fem.)	إِلَيْهَا		١٥	yellow (masc. sing.)	أَصْفَرُ	
١٦	places	أَمَاكِنُ		١٦	lighting	إِضَاءَةٌ	
٣١	nation	أُمَّةٌ		٧٥	fix (imperative fem. pl.)	اِضْبِطْنَ	
٨٢	examination	اِمْتِحَانٌ		٧٤	prepare (imperative dual)	أَعِدَّا	
٢٣	your (masc. sing.) state	أَمْرُكَ		٦٢	we prepared	أَعْدَدْنَا	

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	أُمَمٌ	nations	٣٦
	أَمْوَالٌ	sums of money	١٦
	أُمُورٌ	matters	٣٦
	أَمِيلُ إِلَى	I like	٢٣
	إِنَّ	an emphatic particle	١٥
	أَنَّ	that (conjunction)	١٦
	إِنْتَاجٌ	production	٢
	انْتَصَفَ النَّهَارُ	it was noon	٩
	انْتِفَاعٌ بِـ	making use of	١٧
	أُنْشُرَا	saw (imperative-dual)	٧٣
	أَنْضَجْتُهَا	I cooked it (fem)	٦٣
	اهْتَمَّ	he was interested	٤١
	اهْتَمُّوا	they (masc.) were interested	٣٠
	أَهْمَلَ	he neglected	٨٢
	أَهْمَلْتِهِ	you (fem. sing.) neglected him	٨١
	أُوَاصِلُ	I pursue	٢٤
	الأَوَانِي	vessels	٧٤
	(عَلَى) أَيَّةِ (حَالَةٍ)	(at) any (rate)	٢٣
	أَيْدِينَا	our hands	٦٢
	أَيْنَمَا	wheresoever	٨٢
ب	بَارِعِينَ	skilful (masc. pl. accusative)	٤١
	بَاطِنُهَا	their interior	١٦
	بِتْرُولٌ	petroleum	١٥
	بَحْرِيٌّ	naval	٣٧
	بَرَامِجُ	programmes	٥٦
	بَرِّيٌّ	land (adjective)	٣٧
	(بِـ) بَشَاشَةٍ	(with) a smile	٧٤
	بَضَائِعُ	goods	٧٤
	بَعْضُهَا	some of them	١٧
	بِنَاءٌ	building	٣٦
	بَنَادِقُ	rifles	٣٧
	بِنَاؤُهُ	its (masc.) building	٥٧
	بَهِيجٌ	joyful (masc. sing.)	٢٠
	بِيَانُو	piano	٢٣
	بَيْضُهُ	their eggs	٨١
	بَيْنَهُنَّ	among themselves (fem.)	٦٣

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٥٥	their (fem.) homes	بُيُوتُهُنَّ	
٢٩	history	تَارِيخٌ	ت
٣٠	their (masc.) history	تَارِيخُهُمْ	
٧	you (masc sing.) come	تَأْتِي (أَنْتَ)	
٤٩	you (masc. pl.) (did not) follow	(لَمْ) تَتَّبِعُوا	
٣٠	you (masc. sing.) talk	تَتَحَدَّثُ (أَنْتَ)	
٣١	you (masc. sing.) hesitate	تَتَرَدَّدُ (أَنْتَ)	
٨٠	you (masc. sing.) get tired	تَتْعَبُ (أَنْتَ)	
٨٢	(whatever) you (masc. pl.) learn	تَتَعَلَّمُوا	
٤٩	they agree	تَتَّفِقُ (هِيَ)	
٧٣	to air	تَجْدِيدُ الْهَوَاءِ فِي	
٢٣	you (masc. sing) try	تُجَرِّبُ (أَنْتَ)	
٨١	if you (dual) take care (of)	(إِنْ) تُحَافِظَا (عَلَى)	
٧	you (masc. sing.) like	تُحِبُّ (أَنْتَ)	
٢٣	it (fem.) requires	تَحْتَاجُ (هِيَ)	
٨٠	you (masc.sing.) reap	تَحْصُدُ (أَنْتَ)	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٦	they dig	تَحْفِرُ (هِيَ)	
١٧	you (fem. pl.) serve	تَخْدُمْنَ	
٤	domestic science	اَلتَّدْبِيرُ الْمَنْزِلِيُّ	
٣	practising	تَدَرُّبٌ	
٦	they run	تَدُورُ (هِيَ)	
١	they (masc.) translated	تَرْجَمُوا	
٨	canal	تُرْعَةٌ	
٩	you (masc.pl.) want	تُرِيدُونَ	
١٠	you (masc. sing.) grow (plants)	تَزْرَعُ (أَنْتَ)	
٢٢	you (masc. sing.) can	تَسْتَطِيعُ (أَنْتَ)	
١	it (fem.) is used	تُسْتَعْمَلُ (هِيَ)	
٦٣	I took it (fem.)	تَسَلَّمْتُهَا	
١٦	they run	تَسِيرُ (هِيَ)	
٥٧	you (fem. pl.) share	تُشَارِكْنَ	
٤٩	you (two) become	تُصْبِحَانِ	
٥٠	you (fem.sing.) become	تُصْبِحِينَ	
٢٣	they are fit	تَصْلُحُ (هِيَ)	
١٥	they are made	تُصْنَعُ	

Word	Meaning	Page
تَصْوِيرٌ	painting	١
تَصِيرُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) become	٢٤
(لن) تَصِيرَا	you two will (not) become	٥٠
لِتَطَّلِعْ (عَلَى)	make yourself (masc.) familair (with)	٣١
تَظْهَرُ (الْمَوَاهِبُ)	(talents) come out	٢٣
تَعَالَ	come (imperative masc. sing.)	٩
تَعَاوُنٌ	cooperation	٤١
تَعَاوَنَتْ	(they) cooperated	٦٢
تَعِبَ	he got tired	٨٠
تَعْبِيرٌ	expression	٤١
تَعْتَمِدُ	(they) depend	٣٦
تَعْرِضُ (هِيَ)	they exhibit	٢
تَعْرِفُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) become	١٥
تَعْلَمُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) know	١٦
تَعَلُّمٌ	learning	٢٣
تَعْلَمَانِ	you (dual) know	٤٩
تَعَلَّمْتُمْ	you (masc. pl.) learnt	٦٤
لِتَعْلَمُوا	you (masc. pl.) should know	٤٩
تَعْلِيمٌ	education	٥٥
تَعْمَلْنَ	you (fem. pl.) work	٥٧
تَعْمِيرٌ	construction	٣٦
تَعَوَّدْتُمْ	you (masc. pl.) got used to	٦٤
(لا) تَغُشُّوهُمْ	(do not) cheat them (masc.)	٧٤
تَفَرُّغٌ	full occupation	٢
(ما) تَفْعَلُوا	(whatever) you (masc. pl.) do	٨٢
(لا) تَقُلْ	(do not) say (masc. sing.)	٢٩
تُكَافِئُ	(the state) rewards	٢
تَكْسِبُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) gain	٨٠
تَكُونُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) are	٢٢
(لَنْ) تَكُونُوا	you (masc. pl.) will (not) be	٤٩
(لم) تَكُنْ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc.sing.) were (not)	٢٢
تَلَامِيذُهُ	his pupils	٨٢
تِمْثَالُهُ	his statue	٤١
تُمَثِّلُ (الْأَلْوَانُ)	(colours) represent	٢
تَمْجِيدٌ	glorification	٤١
تَمِيلُ (أَنْتَ) إِلَى	you (masc. sing.) like	٢٣

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٥٥	(women) get	تَنَالُ (النِّسَاءُ)	
٣١	do (not) wait (masc. sing.)	(لَا) تَنْتَظِرْ	
٤٠	(statues) are carved	تُنْحَتُ (التَّمَاثِيلُ)	
٤١	(statues) are erected	تُنْصَبُ (التَّمَاثِيلُ)	
٢	(exhibitions) are organised	تُنَظَّمُ (الْمَعَارِضُ)	
٥٠	(that) you (fem. sing.)write (poetry)	(أَنْ) تَنْظِمِي	
١٦	they spend (money)	(هِيَ) تُنْفِقُ	
٨١	(whenever) you (fem. sing.) take care	(مَتَى) تَهْتَمِّي	
٤٩	(do not) neglect (you two)	(لا) تُهْمِلَا	
٤٩	(do not) neglect (masc. pl.)	(لا) تُهْمِلُوا	
٥٠	(do not) neglect (fem. sing.)	(لا) تُهْمِلِي	
٧٤	spices	تَوَابِلُ	
٥٠	you (dual)(did not) persist	(لَمْ) تُوَاظِبَا	
٨١	(if)... you (dual) save	(إِنْ).. تُوَفِّرَا	
٨	third (fem.)	ثَالِثَةٌ	ث
٨	second (fem.)	ثَانِيَةٌ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٩	sitting (masc. dual-accusative)	جَالِسَيْنِ	ج
٥٧	wounded (pl.)	جَرْحَى	
٣٠	it (masc.) united	جَمَعَ	
٦٤	they (masc. pl.) collected	جَمَعُوا	
٤٩	society	جَمْعِيَّةٌ	
٣٠	Jihad (holy war)	جِهَادٌ	
٢	their (masc.) efforts	جُهُودُهُمْ	
٣٧	air (adjective)	جَوِّيٌّ	
٣٦	army	جَيْشٌ	
٣٦	their army	جَيْشُهَا	
٨١	take care (imperative-dual)	حَافِظَا	ح
٢٣	case	حَالَةٌ	
١	easel	حَامِلٌ	
٩	until	حَتَّى	
٤٠	stone	حَجَرٌ	
٥٥	rooms	حُجُرَاتٌ	
٣٦	frontiers	حُدُودٌ	
٣٦	their freedom	حُرِّيَّتُهَا	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٢	grief	حُزْنٌ	ح
٢	sad(masc. sing.)	حَزِينٌ	
٧٥	(class) hour	حِصَّةٌ	
٨٠	he reaped	حَصَدَ	
٢٩	civilization	حَضَارَةٌ	
٢٩	their (masc.) civilization	حَضَارَتُهُمْ	
٨	luck	حَظٌّ	
٨	his luck	حَظُّهُ	
٥٥	their (fem. pl.) share	حَظُّهُنَّ	
٧٢	field	حَقْلٌ	
٢٣	truth	حَقِيقَةٌ	
٣٠	they (masc.) ruled	حَكَمُوا	
١٥	ornaments	حُلِيٌّ	
٧٤	(to) her two maids	(لِ)خَادِمَتَيْهَا	خ
٤٩	special (fem.)	خَاصَّةٌ	
٨١	his service	خِدْمَتُهُ	
٧٥	sew (imperative-fem. pl.) it	خِطْنَهُ	
٧٢	lines	خُطُوطٌ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٧٢	keep on (imperative-masc. sing.)	دَاوِمْ	د
٨١	always	دَائِمًا	
٣٧	tanks	دَبَّابَاتٌ	
٢٤	my study	دِرَاسَتِي	
٦١	study	دَرْسٌ	
٦١	lessons	دُرُوسٌ	
٨٢	his lessons	دُرُوسُهُ	
٣٠	it (masc.) called them	دَعَاهُمْ	
٧٣	drive (imperative-dual) (the nails)	دُقَّا (الْمَسَامِيرَ)	
٤١	minuteness	دِقَّةٌ	
٤١	minute(fem. adjective)	دَقِيقَةٌ	
١٧	(but) not	دُونَ	
٢	state,government	دَوْلَةٌ	
١٧	its (masc.) countries	دُوَلُهُ	
٣١	religion	دِينٌ	
٧٤	nice manners	ذَوْقٌ	ذ
٦١	you (masc. sing.) revised	رَاجَعْتَ	ر
٦٢	you (dual) revised	رَاجَعْتُمَا	

Letter	*Word*	*Meaning*	*Page*
	رَاقِبَا	watch (imperative-dual)	٧٤
	رَأْيُكَ	your (masc. sing.) point of view	٢٣
	رَبَّةُ (الْبَيْتِ)	housewife	٧٤
	رَتِّبِي	put in order (imperative fem. sing.)	٧٣
	رَخَاءٌ	plenitude	٣٠
	رَسَبَ	he failed	٨٢
	رَسَمَا	they (masc. dual) drew	٦٣
	رَسُولٌ	prophet	٧٤
	رُسُومٌ	drawings	٦٣
	رَمْسِيسُ	Ramses	٤١
	رَمَى	he cast	٨
	اَلرُّومُ	the Byzantines	٣٠
	اَلرِّيَاضَةُ	mathematics	٣١
ز	اَلزَّاهِي	bright (masc. sing.)	٢
	زَاهِيَةٌ	bright (fem.)	٢
	زَبَائِنُ	customers	٧٤
	زِرَاعَةٌ	agriculture	١٦
	زَرَعَ	he grew (plants)	٨٠

Letter	*Word*	*Meaning*	*Page*
س	زَوَارِقُ	boats	٣٧
	سَابِقَةٌ	previous (fem.)	٦١
	سَائِحٌ	tourist (masc.)	٢٩
	سُرِرْنَا	we were pleased	٦٢
	سَقْيٌ	watering	٧٢
	سِلَاحٌ	(military) force	٣٧
	سِمَادٌ	manure	٧٢
	سَمِعْتُهُ	I heard it (masc.)	٤٩
	سَمْنٌ	butter	٧٤
	سَيَكُونُ	it (masc.) will be	١٠
	سَيِّئٌ	bad	٨
ش	شَاعِرَةٌ	poetess	٥٠
	شَاعِرَيْنِ	poets (masc. dual - accusative)	٤٩
	شَرِكَاتٌ	companies	١٦
	شَطْرَانِ	two hemistiches (nominative)	٤٨
	شِعْرٌ	poetry	٤٨
	شُعَرَاءُ	poets	٤٨
	شِعْرُكُمَا	your (dual) poetry	٤٩

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
١٠	delicious (masc. sing.)	شَهِيٌّ	
٣١	you (masc. sing.) made me anxious	شَوَّقْتَنِي	
٩	it (masc.) became	صَارَ	ص
٩	it (fem.) became	صَارَتْ	
٨١	he maintained	صَانَ	
٧٢	patience	صَبْرٌ	
٨١	two apprentices	صَبِيَّانِ	
٧	bright (masc. sing.)	صَحْوٌ	
٨٢	youth	صِغَرٌ	
٧	fishing rod	صِنَارَةٌ	
٨	his fishing rod	صِنَارَتُهُ	
١٦	industry	صِنَاعَةٌ	
٦٢	making	صُنْعٌ	
٦٢	you (fem. sing.) made	صَنَعْتِ	
٦٣	they (fem. dual) made	صَنَعَتَا	
٦٣	you (fem. pl.) made	صَنَعْتُنَّ	
٦٢	we made	صَنَعْنَا	
٣٧	victims	ضَحَايَا	ض
٤١	hugeness	ضَخَامَةٌ	
٧٢	put (imperative-masc. sing.)	ضَعْ	
٦٢	girl students	طَالِبَاتٌ	ط
٧٤	her girl students	طَالِبَاتُهَا	
٥٠	girl student	طَالِبَةٌ	
٤٩	two students (genitive)	طَالِبَيْنِ	
٣١	physics	(عِلْمُ) الطَّبِيعَةِ	
٧	bait	طُعْمٌ	
٣٧	torpedo	طُورْبِيدٌ	
١٦	aeroplanes	طَيَّارَاتٌ	
٩	(the two friends) remained	ظَلَّ (الصَّدِيقَانِ)	ظ
٢٤	(music) player	عَازِفٌ	ع
٤١	public (gardens)	(اَلْحَدَائِقُ) الْعَامَّةُ	
٧٤	treat (imperative masc. pl.) them	عَامِلُوهُمْ	
٦٣	they (fem. dual) kneeded	عَجَنَتَا	
٣٧	many, a lot of	عِدَّةُ ..	
٦٤	(newspaper) issue	عَدَدٌ	
١٦	Arab	عَرَبِيٌّ	
٣١	old-rooted (fem.)	عَرِيقَةٌ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٢٣	(music) playing	عَزْفٌ	
٦٢	we hung it (fem.)	عَلَّقْنَاهَا	
٣١	their (masc.) sciences	عُلُومُهُمْ	
٢٣	to (lit. on) it (masc.)	عَلَيْهِ	
٨١	of (lit. on) it (fem.)	عَلَيْهَا	
٧٤	workers	عُمَّالٌ	
٦٢	making it (fem.)	عَمَلُهَا	
٨١	care	عِنَايَةٌ	
٢٤	then	عِنْدَئِذٍ	
٤١	often	غَالِباً	غ
١٠	food	غِذَاءٌ	
٧٣	glue	غِرَاءٌ	
٧٤	he cheated us	غَشَّنَا	
٧٣*	(to) his two apprentices	(لِ) غُلَامَيْهِ	
١٦	rich	غَنِيٌّ	
٣٧	submarines	غَوَّاصَاتٌ	
٥٥	except	غَيْرِ	
٢٣	other than it (fem. sing.)	غَيْرُهَا	
٩	change (imperative - masc.sing.)	غَيِّرْ	
٣٠	they (masc.) conquered	فَتَحُوا	ف
٨١	chicken	فِرَاخٌ	
٢	joy	فَرَحٌ	
٣٠	the Persians	اَلْفُرْسُ	
١	brush	فُرْشَةٌ	
٦٣	oven	فُرْنٌ	
٥٥	thanks to	بِفَضْلِ	
٣٠	please	مِنْ فَضْلِكَ	
٣٠	their value	فَضْلُهَا	
٦٢	cake	فَطِيرَةٌ	
٣١	philosophy	فَلْسَفَةٌ	
٣١	astronomy	اَلْفَلَكُ	
٢٢	art	فَنٌّ	
٢٢	artist	فَنَّانٌ	
٢	artists (masc. pl. accusative)	فَنَّانِينَ	
٣٠	arts	فُنُونٌ	
٦٢	in it (masc.)	فِيهِ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٣٧	bombers	قَاذِفَاتٌ	ق
٤٩	rhyme	قَافِيَةٌ	
٥٧	fighting	قِتَالٌ	
٣٠	an emphatic particle	قَدْ	
٤١	ancient (pl.)	قُدَمَاءُ	
٧٣	hammer	قَدُومٌ	
٨٢	the Holy Koran	اَلْقُرْآنُ الْكَرِيمُ	
٦١	I read (past)	قَرَأْتُ	
٢٩	you (masc.sing.) read (past)	قَرَأْتَ	
٦٢	you (fem. sing.) read (past)	قَرَأْتِ	
٦٢	you (dual) read (past)	قَرَأْتُمَا	
٦٤	they (masc.) read (past)	قَرَءُوا	
٨	our village	قَرْيَتُنَا	
٦٣	they (dual) divided	قَسَّمَا	
٧٢	divide (imperative - masc. sing.) it	قَسِّمْهَا	
٤٨	poem (fem.) sing.	قَصِيدَةٌ	
٧٤	pieces	قِطَعٌ	
٧٤	cut (imperative dual)	قَطِّعَا	
٨١	(eggs) became few	قَلَّ (الْبَيْضُ)	
٨١	(chicken) became few	قَلَّتِ (الْفِرَاخُ)	
٣١	I said it (masc.)	قُلْتُهُ	
٣٧	bombs	قَنَابِلُ	
٤٩	rules	قَوَاعِدُ	
٧٥	measurement	قِيَاسٌ	
١٧	full (masc. sing.)	كَامِلٌ	ك
١٦	latent (masc. sing.)	كَامِنٌ	
١٦	particle of comparison	كَأَنَّ	
٨٢	old age	كِبَرٌ	
٣١	books	كُتُبٌ	
٦٤	they (masc.) wrote	كَتَبُوا	
٨٠	he gained	كَسَبَ	
٨٠	we gained	كَسَبْنَا	
٢٠	their word	كَلِمَتُهُمْ	
٣١	and also	كَمَا	
٣٧	disasters	اَلْكَوَارِثُ	

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	كَيْ	in order to	٢٣
	كَيْفَ	how	٦٣
	كِيمْيَاءُ	chemistry	٣١
ل	لَدَيْكِ	you (fem. sing.) have	٥٠
	لَدَيْكُمَا	you (dual) have	٤٩
	لَعَلَّ	perhaps	١٦
	لَنْ	a negative particle	٢٣
	لِهَذَا	therefore	٢
	لَوْحَةٌ	canvas	١
	لَيْتَ	would that ...!	١٧
	لَيْسَتْ	it (fem.sing.) is not	٨
م	مَادَّةٌ	material	٦٤
	مُبَارَكَةٌ	blessed (fem.)	٥٥
	مَتْجَرٌ	shop	٧٤
	مُتْحَفٌ	museum	٤٢
	مُتَعَدِّدَةٌ	numerous (fem.)	١٦
	مُتَفَوِّقُونَ	excellent (masc. pl. nominative)	٢
	مُتَمَاسِكٌ	coherent (masc. sing.)	٤٩
	مُتَمَرِّدِينَ	rebels (masc. pl. accusative)	٣٧
	مَثَّالٌ	sculptor	٤٠
	مَثَّالِينَ	sculptors (masc. pl. accusative)	٤١
	مِثْلَنَا	like us	٦٣
	مُجْتَهِدَانِ	industrious (dual - nominative)	٦٢
	مُجِيدَةٌ	good (fem. sing)	٥٠
	مُجِيدَيْنِ	good (dual-accusative)	٤٩
	مُحْتَاجٌ	in need of	٧٢
	مُحْرِقَةٌ	scorching (fem. sing.)	٩
	مَحْصُولُنَا	our crop	٨٠
	مَدَارِسُ	schools	٥٦
	مَدَافِعُ	guns	٣٧
	مُدَمِّرَاتٌ	destroyers	٣٧
	مِرَانٌ	practice	٤٩
	مَرْأَةٌ	woman	٥٥
	اَلْمَرْضَى	the sick	٥٧
	مُسْتَشْفَيَاتٌ	hospitals	٥٧

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter	Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٣٧	fighter (aeroplane)	مُقَاتِلَةٌ		٧٣	nails	مَسَامِيرُ	
٧٥	scissors	مِقَصٌّ		١	ready (masc. sing.)	مُسْتَعِدٌّ	
٩	your (masc. sing.) place	مَكَانُكَ		٨	pleased (dual-accusative)	مَسْرُورَيْنِ	
٧٤	salt	مِلْحٌ		٤١	Egyptian (masc. sing)	مِصْرِيٌّ	
٤١	their (masc.) kings	مُلُوكُهُمْ		٣٧	armoured (fem.)	مُصَفَّحَةٌ	
١٧	receiving benefit (masc. pl. nominative)	مُنْتَفِعُونَ		١	painter (masc. sing.)	مُصَوِّرٌ	
٢	grants	مِنَحٌ		٢	painters (masc. pl. nominative)	مُصَوِّرُونَ	
٧٤	domestic (masc. - sing.)	مَنْزِلِيٌّ		٢	painters (masc. pl.-genitive)	مُصَوِّرِينَ	
٧٣	saw	مِنْشَارٌ		٧٤	kitchen	مَطْبَخٌ	
٧٢	its (masc.) times	مَوَاعِيدُهُ		٢	exhibitions	مَعَارِضُ	
٢٣	talents	مَوَاهِبُ		٤١	expressive (masc. sing.)	مُعَبِّرٌ	
٢٣	musical (fem.)	مُوسِيقِيَّةٌ		٣٦	assailants (masc. pl. accusative)	مُعْتَدِينَ	
١٠	lucky (masc. sing.)	مُوَفَّقٌ		٢	dim (masc. sing.)	مُعْتِمٌ	
٧٤	stove	مَوْقِدٌ		٢	dim (fem.)	مُعْتِمَةٌ	
٢٢	talent	مَوْهِبَةٌ		١٥	metal	مَعْدِنٌ	
٢٢	talented (masc. sing.)	مَوْهُوبٌ		٤٠	certain (masc. sing.)	مُعَيَّنٌ	
٢	junior (masc. pl.-nominative)	نَاشِئُونَ	ن	٤١	certain (fem. sing.)	مُعَيَّنَةٌ	
٢	junior (masc.pl. genitive)	نَاشِئِينَ		٣٧	corruptors (masc. pl. accusative)	مُفْسِدِينَ	

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	نَافِعٌ	useful (masc. sing.)	١٦
	نَثْرٌ	prose	٤٨
	نَجَّارٌ	carpenter	٧٣
	نَجَحَ	he succeeded	٨٢
	نَحْتٌ	sculpture	٤٠
	نَسِيجٌ	material (cloth)	٧٥
	نَشَرُوا	they (masc.) spread (past)	٣٠
	نَصَائِحُ	bits of advice	٨٠
	نَصْطَادُ	we fish	٨
	نَظِّفَا	clean (imperative dual)	٧٤
	نَظِّفِي	clean (imperative fem. sing.)	٧٣
	نَظِّمِي	put in order (imperative-fem. sing.)	٧٣
	نَظِيرٌ	something like	٤١
	نَفْسُكَ	yourself (masc. sing.)	٢٣
	نَفِيسٌ	precious (masc. sing.)	١٥
	نَهَارٌ	day (opp. night)	٩
	نَهْضَةٌ	rise, renaissance	٥٥
و	وَحْدَكِ	by yourself (fem.)	٦٢
	وَزَّعَ	he distributed	٢
	وُزِّعَتْ	(the colours) were applied	٢
	وَزَّعْتُنَّ	you (fem. pl.) distributed	٦٣
	وَزَّعْنَ	they (fem.) distributed	٦٣
	وَزْنٌ	rhythm	٤٩
	وُضِعَتْ	it (fem.) was put	١
	وَطَنٌ	country	١٦
	وَظَائِفُ	offices	٥٦
	وَفِيرٌ	abundant (masc. sing.)	١٧
	وَقُودٌ	fuel	١٦
ى	يَتَكَوَّنُ	it (masc.) consists (of)	٣٧
	يَتَهَاوَنُ	it (masc.) slackens	٣٦
	يَجْهَلُ	he is ignorant of	٣٠
	يَحْتَاجُ	it (masc.) requires	٢٢
	يَدْخُلُ	it (masc.) goes into	١٦
	يُدَرِّسْنَ	they (fem. pl.) teach	٥٦
	يُدْرِكُكُمْ	it (masc.) overtakes you (masc. pl.)	٨٢
	يَدْرِى	he knows	٢٤

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	يُرَابِطُ	it (masc.) is stationed	٣٦
	يُرَتِّبْنَ	they (fem.) arrange	٥٥
	يَرُدُّ	it (masc.) repels	٣٦
	يَرْسُبُ	he fails	٨٢
	يَرْسُمُ	he paints	٢
	يُرِيدُ	he wants	٤١
	يَسْتَخْدِمُ	it (masc.) uses	٣٧
	يُسْتَخْدَمُ	it (masc.) is used	١٦
	يُسْعِدُكَ	it (masc.) makes you happy	٢٤
	يُسْعِفُ	it (masc.) rescues	٣٧
	يُسْعِفْنَ	they (fem.) help	٥٧
	يُسْهِمُ	it (masc.) plays part	٣٧
	يُشَارِكُ	it (masc.) participates	٣٦
	يُشَارِكْنَ	they (fem.)take part	٥٦
	يُشَاهِدُهَا (النَّاسُ)	(people) see them	٤١
	يَشْتَرِكْنَ	they (fem.) take part	٥٧
	يَشْغَلْنَ	they (fem.) hold (offices)	٥٦
	يَشْهَدُ	it sees	٤١
	يَطْبُخْنَ	they (fem.) cook	٥٥
	يُعَالِجْنَ	they (fem.) treat	٥٧
	يُعَبِّرُ	he expresses	٤١
	يُعْرَضُ	it is exhibited	٢٠
	يَعْلَمُهُ	he knows it (masc.)	٨٢
	يَعْمَلَانِ	they (masc. dual) work	٨١
	يَعْمَلْنَ	they (fem.) work (masc.)	٥٦
	(لَمْ) يَغِبْ عَنْهُمْ	they were (not) unaware of it (masc.)	٣٠
	يَغْسِلْنَ	they (fem.) wash	٥٥
	(لَا) يَفُتْكَ	do (not) forget (masc. sing.)	٤٢
	يُقَدَّرُ (الْمُصَوِّرُونَ)	(painters) are appreciated	٢٠
	يَقْتَصِرُ (عَلَى)	it (masc.) is confined (to)	٥٦
	يُقَدِّمْنَ	they (fem.) present	٥٦
	يُكَافِحُ	it (masc.) fights against	٣٧
	يَكْتُبُونَ	they (masc.) write	٤٨
	يَكْثُرُ (الْبَيْضُ)	(eggs) increase (in number)	٨١

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	يُكَوِّنَانِ	they (dual) make	٤٨
	(أَنْ) يَلْتَزِمُوا	they (masc.) observe (subjunctive)	٤٩
	يُمَثَّلُ	it (masc.) is represented	٢
	يُمَثِّلُ	it represents	٤٠
	يُمْنَحُ (الْمُتَفَوِّقُونَ)	the excellent ones are granted	٢
	يَنْجَحُ	he succeeds	٨٢
	يَنْحِتُ	he carves	٤٠
	يُنْحَتُ	it (masc.) is carved	٤٠
	يَنْضَجُ	it (masc.) is cooked	٧٤
	يُنَظِّفْنَ	they (fem.) clean	٥٥
	(كَيْ) يَنْظِمُوا	(in order that) they (masc.) may compose	٤٩

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	يَنْفَعُ	it (masc.) is useful	٨٢
	يَنْفَعُكُمْ	it (masc.) is useful to you (masc pl.)	٦٤
	يَنْقَسِمُ	it (masc.) is divided into	٤٨
	يَنْقَسِمُونَ	they (masc.) are divided into	٤٨
	يَنْهَضُ (الْعَرَبُ)	(the Arabs) rise	٣٠
	يَنْهَضْنَ	they (fem. pl.) make progress	٥٥
	يَهْمِلُ	he neglects	٤١
	يُوَافِقُ (النَّاسُ)	(people) agree	٢٣
	يُؤَدِّبُ	it (masc.) punishes	٣٧
	اَلْيُونَانُ	the Greeks	٣١

THE ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT BROADCASTING CORPORATION

اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ بِالرَّاديُو

ARABIC BY RADIO

BOOK TWO - PART 4

القَاهِرةُ
Cairo
2004

Copyright reserved by the
A. R. E. *Broadcasting Corporation*

To obtain a copy of this companion write to :
ARABIC BY RADIO
P. O. Box 325
Cairo A. R. E.

Printed by
the Arab States Centre for Functional Literacy
Sirs-el-Layyan, Menoufia, A. R. E.

ألف هذا الكتاب بالعربية :

الأستاذ الدكتور السيد يعقوب بكر
الأستاذ محمد شفيق عطا
الأستاذ السيد محمد العزاوى

الترجمة الصوتية والترجمة الإنجليزية:

الدكتور ألبرت جورجى عبد الله

الرسوم بريشة الفنان محمد قطب

Arabic Original by:

Professor Dr. El-Sayed Yacoub Bakr
Ustaz Muhammad Shafik ᶜAta
Ustaz El-Sayed Muhammad El-ᶜAzzawy

Phonetic Transcription and English Translation by:

Dr. Albert G. Abdallah

Illustrations by:

Muhammad Kotb

الكتاب الثانى

الجزء الرابع

فهرس

رقم الدرس	رقم الصفحة	العنوان	الموضوع النحوى
٩٢	١	الضيف الظريف	الضمائر المتصلة بالأسماء والحروف
٩٣	١١	النيل الخالد	النعت
٩٤	١٨	السينما	حروف العطف
٩٥	٢٧	القرآن الكريم	البدل
٩٦	٣٤	فى السوق	تمييز الكيل والطول (المساحة) والوزن
٩٧	٤٠	من سيرة النبى	تمييز العدد
٩٨	٤٧	فى المطار	المستثنى بإلا
٩٩	٥٣	من القرآن والحديث	المنادى
١٠٠	٦٠	عاقبة التردد	الخبر جملة اسمية
١٠١	٦٧	الربيع	الخبر جملة فعلية
١٠٢	٧٥	العربية لغة عالمية	مراجعة

BOOK TWO - PART FOUR

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Lesson Number	Page Number	Title	Grammatical Subject
92	1	*The Pleasant Guest*	Pronouns suffixed to nouns and particles
93	11	*The Eternal Nile*	The adjective
94	18	*The Cinema*	Coordinating conjunctions
95	27	*The Holy Koran*	The substitute
96	34	*At the Market*	Specification of nouns of Capacity, length (space) and weight
97	40	*From the Biography of the Prophet*	Specification of number
98	47	*At the Airport*	The excepted noun
99	53	*Extracts from the Koran and the Tradition*	The vocative
100	60	*The Consequence of Hesitation*	The predicate as a nominal sentence
101	67	*Spring*	The predicate as a verbal sentence
102	75	*Arabic is a World Language*	Revision

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّانِى وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety - Two

اَلضَّيْفُ الظَّرِيفُ

The Pleasant Guest

اِسْتَضَافَ رَجُلٌ صَدِيقاً فِى بَيْتِهِ .

A man played host to a friend in his house.

وَكَانَ عَلَى مَائِدَةِ الْعَشَاءِ بَطَّةٌ سَمِينَةٌ .

There was a fat duck on the supper table.

قَالَ الرَّجُلُ لِضَيْفِهِ مُدَاعِباً :

The man said playfully to his friend,

« اِقْسِمْ بَيْنَنَا الْبَطَّةَ . »

" Divide the duck among us. "

ضَحِكَ الرَّجُلُ وَقَالَ :

The man laughed and said,

« هَلْ تَقْبَلُونَ قِسْمَتِي ؟ »

" Will you accept the way I divide? "

قَالُوا جَمِيعاً : « نَعَمْ ، نَقْبَلُ قِسْمَتَكَ . »

All of them said, " Yes, we accept your way of dividing."

قَطَعَ الضَّيْفُ رَأْسَ الْبَطَّةِ ، وَقَدَّمَهَا لِصَدِيقِهِ قَائِلاً :

The guest cut the head of the duck off and presented it to his friend saying,

« هَذِهِ الْأُسْرَةُ أَنْتَ رَأْسُهَا ، فَلَكَ الرَّأْسُ . »

" You are the head of this family; therefore you get the head (of the duck). "

وَقَدَّمَ جَنَاحَيْهَا لِوَلَدَيِ الرَّجُلِ قَائِلاً :

He presented the two wings to the man's two sons saying,

« أَنْتُمَا الْجَنَاحَانِ ، فَالْجَنَاحَانِ لَكُمَا . »

" Your are the two wings (of the family); therefore you get the two wings. "

وَقَدَّمَ سَاقَيْهَا لِبِنْتَيِ الرَّجُلِ قَائِلاً :

He presented the two legs to the man's two daughters saying,

« أَنْتُمَا السَّاقَانِ ، فَالسَّاقَانِ لَكُمَا . »

" You are the two legs (supporting the family); therefore you get the two legs. "

وَقَدَّمَ عَجزَهَا لِزَوْجَةِ الرَّجُلِ ، وَقَالَ لَهَا ضَاحِكاً :

He gave the hind part to the man's wife, and laughingly said to her,

« هَذَا لَكِ . اَلْعَجزُ لِلْعَجُوزِ . وَبَاقِي الْبَطَّةِ لِي . »

" This is for you. The hind part is for the old woman.
The rest of the duck is for me."

وَفِي اللَّيْلَةِ التَّالِيَةِ أَعَدَّتْ رَبَّةُ الْبَيْتِ خَمْسَ دَجَاجَاتٍ .

The following night the housewife prepared five chickens.

قَالَ رَبُّ الْبَيْتِ لِضَيْفِهِ :

The master of the house said to his guest,

« هَذِهِ خَمْسُ دَجَاجَاتٍ ، اِقْسِمْهَا بَيْنَنَا . »

" Here are five chickens. Divide them among us."

ضَحِكَ الرَّجُلُ وَقَالَ :

The man laughed and said,

« عِنْدِي قِسْمَةٌ زَوْجِيَّةٌ ، وَقِسْمَةٌ فَرْدِيَّةٌ ، وَلَكُمُ الْخِيَارُ . »

" I can divide them evenly or oddly, and you have the choice."

قَالُوا : « نُرِيدُ الْقِسْمَةَ الْفَرْدِيَّةَ . »

They said, " We want the odd division."

قَالَ الضَّيْفُ لِرَبِّ الْبَيْتِ :

The guest said to the master of the house,

« أَنْتَ وَزَوْجَتُكَ وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلاَثَةٌ .

" You, your wife and a chicken make three.

وَوَلَدَاكُمَا وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلاَثَةٌ .

Your two sons and a chicken make three.

وَبِنْتَاكُمَا وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلاَثَةٌ .

Your two daughters and a chicken make three.

وَأَنَا وَدَجَاجَتَانِ ثَلاَثَةٌ . »

I and two chickens make three. "

ضَحِكَ الْجَمِيعُ مِنْ هَذِهِ الْقِسْمَةِ .

They all laughed at this division.

ثُمَّ عَادَ فَقَسَّمَ الدَّجَاجَاتِ بِالْعَدْلِ ،

Then the guest divided the chickens fairly,

وَقَضَوْا لَيْلَتَهُمْ فِي سُرُورٍ .

and they passed their evening pleasantly.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1 هَلْ تَقْبَلُونَ قِسْمَتِي . بَاقِي الْبَطَّةِ لِي .

The pronominal suffix (اَلْيَاءُ) is suffixed to the noun (قِسْمَةٌ) in the first sentence, and to the preposition (اَللَّامُ) in the second. This pronominal suffix refers to the first person singular, and is therefore called the (يَاءُ) of the speaker (يَاءُ الْمُتَكَلِّمِ) .

2 نَقْبَلُ قِسْمَتَكَ . لَكَ الرَّأْسُ .
هٰذَا لَكِ .

The pronominal suffix (كَ) is suffixed to the noun (قِسْمَةٌ) in the first sentence, and to the preposition (اَللَّامُ) in the second. This pronominal suffix refers to the second person masculine singular and is therefore called (كَافُ الْمُخَاطَبِ) .

In the third sentence the pronominal suffix (كِ) is suffixed to the preposition (اَللَّامُ). This pronominal suffix refers to the second person feminine singular and is therefore called (كَافُ الْمُخَاطَبَةِ) .

3 دَعَا رَجُلٌ صَدِيقَهُ .
هٰذِهِ الْأُسْرَةُ أَنْتَ رَأْسُهَا .

In the first sentence the pronominal suffix (هُ) is attached to the noun (صَدِيقٌ) . This suffix refers to the third person masculine singular (رَجُلٌ)

and is therefore called (ضَمِيرُ الْغَائِبِ) .

In the second sentence the pronominal suffiix (هَا) is attached to the noun (رَأْس) .This suffiix refers to the third person feminine singular and is therefore called (ضَمِيرُ الْغَائِبَةِ) .

4. قَالَ لَهُمَا : أَنْتُمَا الْجَنَاحَانِ ، فَالْجَنَاحَانِ لَكُمَا .

قَالَ لَهُمَا : أَنْتُمَا السَّاقَانِ ، فَالسَّاقَانِ لَكُمَا .

In the sentence (قَالَ لَهُمَا) the pronoun (هُمَا) is suffixed to the preposition (اَللَّامُ) . The pronoun (هُمَا) refers to the third person dual, whether masculine or feminine.

In the sentences (اَلْجَنَاحَانِ لَكُمَا) and (اَلسَّاقَانِ لَكُمَا) the pronominal suffix is (كُمَا) . This pronoun refers to the second person dual, whether masculine or feminine.

5. اِقْسِمْ بَيْنَنَا .

In this sentence the pronominal suffix (نَا) is attached to (بَيْنَ) . This pronoun refers to the first person plural.

6. أَقْسِمُهَا بَيْنَكُمْ . اَلْأَمْرُ لَكُمْ .

The pronominal suffix (كُمْ) refers to the second person masculine plural, but the pronominal suffix (كُنَّ) refers to the second person feminine plural as in:

أَقْسِمُهَا بَيْنَكُنَّ . اَلْأَمْرُ لَكُنَّ .

7. قَضَوْا لَيْلَتَهُمْ فِي سُرُورٍ .

The pronoun (هُمْ) , suffixed to the noun (لَيْلَةٌ) , refers to the third person masculine plural. The third person feminine plural is referred to by the pronoun (هُنَّ) as in:

لَبِسَتِ النِّسَاءُ ثِيَابَهُنَّ .

(The women put on their clothes)

Table of pronouns suffixed to nouns and particles

Plural		Dual		Singular	
كِتَابُنَا لَنَا	First person (both genders)	كِتَابُنَا لَنَا	First person (both genders)	كِتَابِي لِي	First person (both genders) (my book is for me)
كِتَابُكُمْ لَكُمْ	Second person masculine	كِتَابُكُمَا لَكُمَا	Second person masculine	كِتَابُكَ لَكَ	Second person masculine
كِتَابُكُنَّ لَكُنَّ	Second person feminine		Second person feminine	كِتَابُكِ لَكِ	Second person feminine
كِتَابُهُمْ لَهُمْ	Third person masculine	كِتَابُهُمَا لَهُمَا	Third person masculine	كِتَابُهُ لَهُ	Third person masculine
كِتَابُهُنَّ لَهُنَّ	Third person feminine		Third person feminine	كِتَابُهَا لَهَا	Third person feminine

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Underline the pronominal suffixes and indicate the kind of each:

ا ـ قَدَّمَ جَنَاحَيْهَا لِوَلَدَيِ الرَّجُلِ .

ب ـ أَنْتَ وَزَوْجَتُكَ وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ .

ج ـ وَلَدَاكُمَا وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ .

د ـ بِنْتَاكُمَا وَدَجَاجَةٌ ثَلَاثَةٌ .

2. Indicate the pronominal suffixes showing the kind of each:

ا ـ نَبِيلٌ جِسْمُهُ سَاخِنٌ ، وَحَالَتُهُ سَيِّئَةٌ .

ب ـ أَصْدِقَاءُ نَبِيلٍ وَجُهُهُمْ أَصْفَرُ ، وَدُمُوعُهُمْ نَازِلَةٌ .

ج ـ بَيْتُنَا صِحِّيٌّ ، وَشَمْسُنَا جَمِيلَةٌ ، وَنَوَافِذُنَا وَاسِعَةٌ .

د ـ اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ يَحْمِلُونَ حَقَائِبَهُمْ فِي أَيْدِيهِمْ .

ه ـ نَظَّفَتِ النِّسَاءُ بُيُوتَهُنَّ .

و ـ تُحِبُّ الْأُمُّ أَوْلَادَهَا .

3. Fill in the blanks with suitable pronominal suffixes:

ا ـ اَلْحَدِيقَةُ بَابُ . . . . . مَفْتُوحٌ .

ب ـ اَلْمَطْعَمُ أَسْعَارُ . . . . مُنَاسِبَةٌ .

ج ـ اَلْوَرْدَتَانِ رَائِحَةُ . . . . جَمِيلَةٌ .

د ـ اَلْأَوْلَادُ يَلْعَبُونَ بِلُعَبِ . . . .

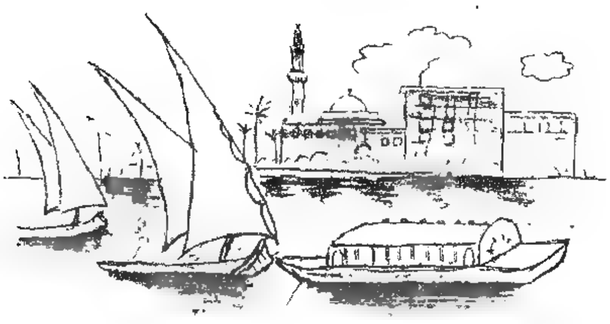
ه ـ اَلتِّلْمِيذَاتُ يَذْهَبْنَ إِلَى مَدْرَسَةِ . . .

4. أَنْتَ كَتَبْتَ رِسَالَةً لِعَمِّكَ .

Address this sentence to the dual, to the masculine plural, and then to the feminine plural.

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّالِثُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety-Three



اَلنِّيلُ الْخَالِدُ

The Eternal Nile

كَانَ النَّاسُ قَدِيماً يَجْهَلُونَ مَنَابِعَ النِّيلِ ،

In ancient times people did not know where the sources of the Nile were.

وَيَظُنُّونَ أَنَّهُ يَنْبُعُ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ .

They thought that it sprang from heaven.

وَفِي الْقَرْنِ الْمَاضِي كُشِفَتْ مَنَابِعُهُ الْمَجْهُولَةُ ،

Last century its unknown sources were discovered.

وَهِيَ بُحَيْرَاتٌ ثَلَاثٌ عَظِيمَةٌ فِي أَوَاسِطِ إِفْرِيقِيَّةَ .

They are three great lakes in the centre of Africa.

وَيَتَّصِلُ بِالنِّيلِ رَافِدَانِ كَبِيرَانِ : السُّوبَاطُ وَالنِّيلُ الْأَزْرَقُ .

Two large tributaries flow into (join) the Nile : the Subat and the Blue Nile.

وَيَتَّصِلُ بِهِ رَافِدٌ صَغِيرٌ هُوَ عَطْبَرَةُ .

A small tributary also flows into it; it is the Atbara.

وَهٰذِهِ الرَّوَافِدُ الثَّلَاثُ تَنْبُعُ مِنْ جِبَالِ الْحَبَشَةِ .

These three tributaries spring from the mountains of Ethiopia.

تَسْقُطُ الْأَمْطَارُ الْغَزِيرَةُ صَيْفاً عَلَى هٰذِهِ الْجِبَالِ ،

Heavy rains fall on these mountains in summer,

فَتَنْقُلُ الرَّوَافِدُ الْمِيَاهَ وَالْغِرْيَنَ إِلَى النِّيلِ .

and so these tributaries carry the water and silt to the Nile.

وَيَخْتَرِقُ النِّيلُ الصَّحْرَاءَ الْكُبْرَى ،

The Nile runs through the great desert,

وَيَتَّجِهُ إِلَى الشَّمَالِ حَتَّى يَصُبَّ فِي الْبَحْرِ الْمُتَوَسِّطِ .

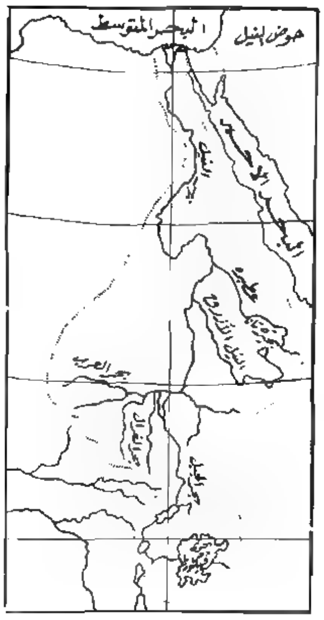
and heads northwards until it flows into the Mediterranean Sea.

وَقُرْبَ الْمَصَبِّ يَتَفَرَّعُ النِّيلُ إِلَى فَرْعَيْنِ كَبِيرَيْنِ ،

Near its mouth, the Nile branches off into two large branches;

هُمَا فَرْعُ رَشِيدَ وَفَرْعُ دِمْيَاطَ .

they are the Rosetta and Damietta branches.



وَفِي وَادِي النِّيلِ نَشَأَتْ حَضَارَةٌ عَرِيقَةٌ ،

An ancient civilization developed in the Nile Valley;

تَشْهَدُ بِعَظَمَتِهَا آثَارُهَا الْبَاقِيَةُ .

its remaining monuments are witness to its greatness.

وَقَدْ اعْتَرَفَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ الْأَقْدَمُونَ بِفَضْلِ النِّيلِ ،

The ancient Egyptians recognized the favours of the Nile;

فَأَقَامُوا لَهُ الاحْتِفَالَاتِ الرَّائِعَةَ كُلَّ عَامٍ .

they used to hold wonderful celebrations in its honour each year.

وَقَدْ أُقِيمَتْ عَلَى مَجْرَى النِّيلِ السُّدُودُ الْعَظِيمَةُ ،

Great dams have been built across the Nile,

لِحِفْظِ مِيَاهِ الْفَيَضَانِ وَالانْتِفَاعِ بِهَا طُولَ الْعَامِ .

to preserve the water of the flood and make use of it all the year round.

وَأَهَمُّ تِلْكَ السُّدُودِ سَدُّ أَسْوَانَ وَالسَّدُّ الْعَالِي .

The most important of these dams are the Aswan Dam and the High Dam.

هَذَا هُوَ النِّيلُ أَطْوَلُ أَنْهَارِ الدُّنْيَا .

That is the Nile, the world's longest river.

وَوَادِيهِ يَمْتَازُ بِالْخِصْبِ وَالرَّخَاءِ .

Its valley is known for its fertility and abundance.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

يَصُبُّ النِّيلُ فِي الْبَحْرِ الْمُتَوَسِّطِ .

In this sentence the word (الْمُتَوَسِّطِ) follows the word (الْبَحْرِ) and qualifies it.

Note that both the adjective and the qualified noun are definite masculine singular nouns. Note also that both are in the genitive case indicated here by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ) .

فِي وَادِي النِّيلِ نَشَأَتْ حَضَارَةٌ عَرِيقَةٌ .

In this sentence the noun(حَضَارَةٌ) is qualified by the adjective (عَرِيقَةٌ) . Both are indefinite feminine singular nouns in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) .

يَتَّصِلُ بِالنِّيلِ رَافِدَانِ كَبِيرَانِ .

In this sentence the noun(رَافِدَانِ) is qualified by the adjective(كَبِيرَانِ) .Both are indefinite masculine dual nouns in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْأَلِفُ) .

اِعْتَرَفَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ الْأَقْدَمُونَ بِفَضْلِ النِّيلِ .

In this sentence the noun الْمِصْرِيُّونَ is qualified by the adjective الْأَقْدَمُونَ. Both are definite masculine plural nouns in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْوَاوُ) .

أُقِيمَتْ عَلَى مَجْرَى النِّيلِ السُّدُودُ الْعَظِيمَةُ .

In this sentence the noun(السُّدُودُ) is qualified by the adjective (الْعَظِيمَةُ) . Note that the word السُّدُودُ is the broken plural form of the singular اَلسَّدُّ .

Note also that the adjective (العَظِيمَةُ) is a feminine singular. This indicates that a non-human broken plural is qualified by a feminine singular adjective. Both the qualified noun and the adjective are in the nominative case indicated here by (الضَّمَّةُ) .

In Arabic the adjective always follows the qualified noun and agrees *with* it in:

(a) definiteness or indefiniteness,

(b) gender (masculine or feminine),

(c) number (singular, dual or plural),

(d) case (nominative, accusative or genitive).

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Indicate the adjective and the qualified noun in each of the following sentences showing the aspects of agreement between them :

(ا) كُشِفَتِ الْمَنَابِعُ الْمَجْهُولَةُ لِلنِّيلِ .

(ب) يَتَّصِلُ بِالنِّيلِ رَافِدٌ صَغِيرٌ .

(جـ) تَسْقُطُ الْأَمْطَارُ الْغَزِيرَةُ عَلَى جِبَالِ الْحَبَشَةِ .

(د) قُرْبَ الْمَصَبِّ يَتَفَرَّعُ النِّيلُ إِلَى فَرْعَيْنِ كَبِيرَيْنِ .

(هـ) أَقَامَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ لِلنِّيلِ الاحْتِفَالَاتِ الرَّائِعَةَ .

2. Fill in the blank spaces with suitable adjectives chosen from those in brackets:

(وَاسِعَةٌ – مَاهِرُونَ – الصَّحِيحَ – مُنَسَّقَةٌ – الْيَابَانِيَّةِ – نَشِيطَاتٌ)

(ا) تَعَلَّمَ مَاجِدٌ وَفَاطِمَةُ النُّطْقَ . . . . .

(ب) نَسْتَرِيحُ فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ . . . . .

(جـ) فِي مَصَانِعِ حُلْوَانَ عُمَّالٌ . . . . ، وَفِيهَا عَامِلَاتٌ . . . . .

(د) فِي حُلْوَانَ شَوَارِعُ . . . . . وَحَدَائِقُ . . . . .

3. Fill in the blank spaces with suitable qualified nouns chosen from those in brackets (Revise Lesson 58) :

(أَشْجَارٌ – مَقَاعِدُ – مَشْتًى – تَمَاثِيلُ – مَقْعَدَيْنِ)

(ا) فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ . . . . مُرِيحَةٌ ، و . . . . بَدِيعَةٌ ، و . . . ظَلِيلَةٌ .

(ب) جَلَسَ الصَّدِيقَانِ عَلَى . . . . مُرِيحَيْنِ .

(جـ) حُلْوَانُ . . . . جَمِيلٌ .

4. Use each of the words in column (a) as a qualified noun followed by a suitable adjective chosen from the words in column (b) :

(ا)	(ب)
طَالِبَاتٌ	مَعْدِنِيَّةٌ
أَمْطَارٌ	مَاهِرَانِ
فَلَّاحُونَ	مُجْتَهِدَاتٌ
مِيَاهٌ	نَشِيطُونَ
مُجَلَّدَانِ	غَزِيرَةٌ

اَلدَّرْسُ الرَّابِعُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety-Four

اَلسِّينِمَا

The Cinema

ذَهَبَ مَاجِدٌ وَعَاصِمٌ إِلَى صَدِيقِهِمَا نَبِيلٍ .

Maged and Assem called on their friend Nabil.

اِسْتَقْبَلَ نَبِيلٌ مَاجِداً وَعَاصِماً مَسْرُوراً ،

Nabil welcomed Maged and Assem with pleasure,

وَأَجْلَسَهُمَا فِي حُجْرَةِ الْجُلُوسِ .

and led them to the sitting-room.

ثُمَّ قَالَ لَهُمَا :

Then he said to them,

مَاذَا تُحِبَّانِ أَنْ تَشْرَبَا ؟

"What would you like to drink ?

هَلْ تَشْرَبَانِ قَهْوَةً أَوْ شَاياً أَوْ عَصِيرَ فَوَاكِهَ ؟

Would you like to drink coffee, tea or fruit juice ? "

قَالَ مَاجِدٌ :

Maged said,

نَحْنُ فِي الصَّيْفِ ؛ أَنَا أُفَضِّلُ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِهِ .

" We are in summer; I prefer to have some fruit juice. "

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ : وَأَنْتَ يَاعَاصِمُ مَاذَا تُحِبُّ ؟

Nabil said, " And you Assem, what would you like to have ? "

قَالَ عَاصِمٌ :

Assem said,

أُحِبُّ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِهِ مِثْلَ مَاجِدٍ .

" I like to have some fruit juice like Maged. "

قَدَّمَ نَبِيلٌ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِهِ لِمَاجِدٍ وَعَاصِمٍ .

Nabil gave (some) fruit juice to Maged and Assem.

قَالَ مَاجِدٌ وَهُوَ يَشْرَبُ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِهِ :

Maged said while he was drinking the fruit juice,

نُحِبُّ أَنْ نَسْهَرَ اللَّيْلَةَ مَعاً . إِلَى أَيْنَ نَذْهَبُ ؟

" We would like to spend the evening together. Where shall we go ? "

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ :

Nabil said,

نَذْهَبُ اللَّيْلَةَ إِلَى السِّينِمَا أَوِ الْمَسْرَحِ .

"Let's go this evening to the cinema or the theatre."

قَالَ عَاصِمٌ :

Assem said,

لَمْ أَدْخُلِ السِّينِمَا مُنْذُ مُدَّةٍ . هَيَّا إِلَى السِّينِمَا .

"I have not been to the cinema for some time; let's go to the cinema."

خَرَجَ الْأَصْدِقَاءُ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ .

The (three) friends went out (of the house).

خَرَجَ عَاصِمٌ فَمَاجِدٌ فَنَبِيلٌ .

Assem went out, then Maged, and then Nabil.

وَعِنْدَ شُبَّاكِ التَّذَاكِرِ تَقَدَّمَ نَبِيلٌ ،

At the booking-office Nabil stepped forwards,

وَاشْتَرَى ثَلَاثَ تَذَاكِرَ .

and bought three tickets.

وَدَخَلُوا السِّينِمَا ، فَاسْتَقْبَلَهُمْ عَامِلُ الْمَقَاعِدِ .

They walked into the cinema and the usher welcomed them.

أَجْلَسَ نَبِيلاً ، فَمَاجِداً ، فَعَاصِماً بِحَسَبِ أَرْقَامِ تَذَاكِرِهِمْ .

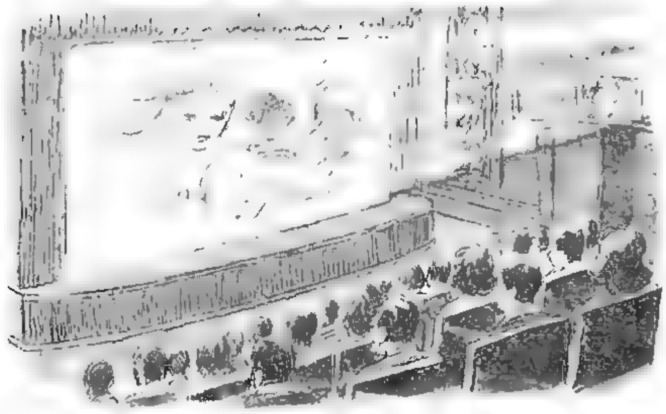
He seated Nabil, then Maged, and then Assem, according to their seat (ticket) numbers.

وَبَعْدَ فَتْرَةٍ أُطْفِئَتِ الْأَنْوَارُ وَبَدَأَ الْعَرْضُ .

After a while the lights were turned out and the attraction began.

رَأَوْا جَرِيدَةَ الْأَخْبَارِ ، ثُمَّ الصُّوَرَ الْمُتَحَرِّكَةَ ،

They saw the newsreel and then the cartoons,



ثُمَّ إعْلَاناً عَنِ الْعَرْضِ الْقَادِمِ .

then a trailer of the forthcoming attraction.

ثُمَّ أُضِيئَتِ الْأَنْوَارُ .

Then the lights were turned on.

وَبَعْدَ فَتْرَةِ الرَّاحَةِ عُرِضَ فِيلْمٌ مُضْحِكٌ .

After the intermission a comic film was shown.

أَخَذَ مَاجِدٌ يَنْظُرُ وَيَضْحَكُ .

Maged watched and laughed.

وَأَخَذَ عَاصِمٌ يَنْظُرُ وَيَضْحَكُ .

Assem watched and laughed.

وَأَخَذَ نَبِيلٌ يَنْظُرُ وَيَضْحَكُ .

Nabil watched and laughed.

وَانْتَهَى الْعَرْضُ ، فَخَرَجَ الْأَصْدِقَاءُ مَسْرُورِينَ .

The attraction came to an end and the (three) friends went out happily.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — المُلاحَظاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. ذَهَبَ مَاجِدٌ وَعَاصِمٌ إِلَى صَدِيقِهِمَا نَبِيلٍ .

In this sentence the two nouns (مَاجِدٌ) and (عَاصِمٌ) carried out the action expressed by the verb (ذَهَبَ) .The coordinating conjunction(اَلْوَاوُ) indicates that the action was carried out jointly by (مَاجِدٌ) and (عَاصِمٌ) . The noun that precedes the coordinating conjunction (وَ) is called the ' coordinated to' (اَلْمَعْطُوفُ عَلَيْهِ), and the noun that follows the conjunction is called the ' coordinated ' (اَلْمَعْطُوفُ) .

Note that the coordinated to here (مَاجِدٌ) is in the nominative case because it is the subject. The coordinated (عَاصِمٌ) is also in the nominative case; the coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case.

2. اِسْتَقْبَلَ نَبِيلٌ مَاجِداً وَعَاصِماً .

In this sentence (اَلْوَاوُ) is the coordinating conjunction, (مَاجِداً) is the coordinated to , and (عَاصِماً) is the coordinated.

Note that the coordinated to is in the accusative case because it is the object. The coordinated is also in the accusative case; the coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case.

3. قَدَّمَ نَبِيلٌ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِهِ لِمَاجِدٍ وَعَاصِمٍ .

In this sentence (اَلْوَاوُ) is the coordinating conjunction, (مَاجِدٍ) is the coordinated to, and (عَاصِمٍ) is the coordinated.

Note that the coordinated to is in the genitive case because it is preceded by

the preposition (اَللاَّمُ) . The coordinated is also in the genitive case; the coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case.

4. أَخَذَ مَاجِدٌ يَنْظُرُ وَيَضْحَكُ .

(اَلْوَاوُ) is the coordinating conjunction, the verb (يَنْظُرُ) is the coordinated to and the verb (يَضْحَكُ) is the coordinated. The two verbs agree in mood; both are in the indicative mood.

5. خَرَجَ عَاصِمٌ ، فَمَاجِدٌ .

In this sentence the coordinating conjunction is (اَلْفَاءُ), the coordinated to is (عَاصِمٌ) and the coordinated is (مَاجِدٌ) .The coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case; both are in the nominative case.

Note that, like (اَلْوَاوُ) , the coordinating conjunction (اَلْفَاءُ) ,indicates a joint action : (عَاصِمٌ) and (مَاجِدٌ) took part in the action of going out.

However, (اَلْفَاءُ) adds a new meaning, for it indicates direct sequence (التَّرْتِيبُ مَعَ التَّعْقِيبِ) , i. e. (عَاصِمٌ) went out first and then (مَاجِدٌ) went out immediately after him.

6. رَأَوْا جَرِيدَةَ الْأَخْبَارِ ، ثُمَّ الصُّوَرَ الْمُتَحَرِّكَةَ .

In this sentence (ثُمَّ) is the coordinating conjunction, (جَرِيدَةَ الْأَخْبَارِ) is the coordinated to, and (الصُّوَرَ) is the coordinated. The coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case; both are in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ).

Note that (ثُمَّ) , like (اَلْوَاوُ) and (اَلْفَاءُ), indicates coordination. Like (اَلْفَاءُ), it also indicates sequence, but the sequence here is not immediate as in the case of (اَلْفَاءُ) ; the newsreel was watched and then (i. e. after

some time) the cartoons were shown. Thus (ثُمَّ) indicates retarted sequence (اَلتَّرْتِيبُ مَعَ التَّرَاخِي) .

7. هَلْ تَشْرَبَانِ قَهْوَةً أَوْ شَاياً ؟

In this sentence (أَوْ) is the coordinating conjunction, (قَهْوَةً) is the coordinated to, and (شَاياً) is the coordinated. The coordinated to and the coordinated agree in case; both are in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) . Note that (أَوْ) indicates choice.

8 . (a) The following are some of the coordinating conjunctions in Arabic :

اَلْوَاوُ : (مَطْلَقُ الْجَمْعِ (indicates simple coordination

اَلْفَاءُ (indicates coordination + immediate sequence) :

ثُمَّ (indicates coordination + retarded sequence) :

أَوْ (indicates choice)

(b) A noun may be coordinated to another noun; a verb may also be coordinated to another verb.

The noun or verb preceding the conjunction is called the coordinated to ; the one that follows it is called the coordinated.

(c) The coordinated always agrees with the coordinated to in case or mood.

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the coordinated, the coordinated to, and the coordinating counjunction in the following sentences :

ا – نَذْهَبُ اللَّيْلَةَ إِلَى السِّينِمَا أَوِ الْمَسْرَحِ .

ب – أَجْلَسَ عَامِلُ الْمَقْعَدِ نَبِيلاً ، فَمَاجِداً ، فَعَاصِماً .

ج – أُطْفِئَتِ الأَنْوَارُ وَبَدَأَ الْعَرْضُ .

د – رَأَوُا الصُّوَرَ الْمُتَحَرِّكَةَ ، ثُمَّ إِعْلَاناً عَنِ الْعَرْضِ الْقَادِمِ .

2. Fill in the blank spaces with suitable coordinating conjunctions :

ا – ذَهَبَ مَاجِدٌ . . . . . عَاصِمٌ إِلَى صَدِيقِهِمَا نَبِيلٍ .

ب – كُلْ تُفَّاحاً . . . . . مَوْزاً .

ج – شَرِبَ مَاجِدٌ . . . . . عَاصِمٌ عَصِيرَ الْفَوَاكِه .

د – دَخَلُوا السِّينِمَا . . . . . اسْتَقْبَلَهُمْ عَامِلُ الْمَقَاعِدِ .

ه – دَخَلُوا السِّينِمَا . . . . . خَرَجُوا مِنْهَا .

3. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a suitable coordinated noun and mark its case ending :

ا – أَضَعُ فِي الْحَقِيبَةِ الْكُتُبَ وَ . . . . .

ب – يَشْرَبُ النَّاسُ فِي الصَّيْفِ عَصِيرَ الْبُرْتُقَالِ أَوْ . . . . . .

ج – شَاهَدْتُ بُرْجَ الْقَاهِرَةِ ثُمَّ . . . . .

د – سَلَّمْتُ عَلَى عَمِّي فَ . . . . .

4. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a suitable coordinated to and mark its case ending.

ا – اِسْتَعْمَلْتُ فِي الْأَكْلِ . . . وَالشَّوْكَةَ .

ب – نَرْكَبُ . . . . أَوِ السَّيَّارَةَ .

ج – . . . . وَالْأُمُّ يُحِبَّانِ أَبْنَاءَهُمَا .

د – . . . . وَالْقَدُومُ مِنْ أَدَوَاتِ النَّجَّارِ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الْخَامِسُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety-Five

اَلْقُرْآنُ الْكَرِيمُ

The Holy Koran

يَقْرَأُ الْمُسْلِمُونَ كَلَامَ اللهِ : الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ .

Moslems recite the word of God : the Holy Koran.

أُنْزِلَ الْقُرْآنُ عَلَى خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ : مُحَمَّدٍ (صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ) .

The Koran was revealed to the last of the prophets : Muhammad (May God bless and greet him).

فِى الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ مِائَةٌ وَأَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ سُورَةً .

In the Holy Koran there are *one* hundred and fourteen suras.

أُنْزِلَتْ بَعْضُ السُّوَرِ عَلَى النَّبِىِّ فِى الْبَلْدَةِ الَّتِى نَشَأَ فِيهَا : مَكَّةَ .

A number of suras were revealed to the Prophet in the town where he grew up Mecca .

وَأُنْزِلَتْ عَلَيْهِ بَقِيَّةُ السُّوَرِ فِي الْبَلْدَةِ الَّتِي هَاجَرَ إِلَيْهَا : الْمَدِينَة .

The rest of the suras were revealed to him in the town to which he emigrated : Medina .

وَفِي مَكَّةَ بَيْتُ اللهِ : الْكَعْبَةُ .

In Mecca there is the House of God : the Ka'bah.

وَفِي الْمَدِينَةِ مَسْجِدُ النَّبِيِّ حَيْثُ دُفِنَ .

In Medina there is the Prophet's Mosque where he was buried.

اَلسُّورَةُ الْأُولَى فِي الْقُرْآنِ سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ .

The first sura in the Koran is the Preface.

تُقْرَأُ السُّورَةُ الْأُولَى : سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ فِي كُلِّ صَلَاةٍ .

The first sura : the Preface is recited in every prayer.

يَدْعُو الْمُسْلِمُونَ اللهَ فِي كُلِّ صَلَاةٍ قَائِلِينَ :

Moslems implore God in every prayer saying :

« اهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ ، صِرَاطَ الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّالِّينَ » .

" Guide us in the right path, the path of those Thou art gracious to; not of those Thou art wroth with; nor of those who err."

نَجِدُ هَذَا الدُّعَاءَ فِي آخِرِ سُورَةِ الْفَاتِحَةِ .

We find this prayer at the end of the Preface.

قَالَ سَالِمٌ لِابْنِهِ نَبِيلٍ وَابْنَتِهِ نِهَادَ :

Salim said to his son Nabil and his daughter Nihad,

29 – ٢٩

أَكْثِرَا مِنْ قِرَاءَةِ الْقُرْآنِ ، فَهُوَ كَلَامٌ عَرَبِيٌّ مُبِينٌ ، يُقَوِّمُ اللِّسَانَ
وَيَهْدِيكُمَا فِي أُمُورِ دِينِكُمَا : الْإِسْلَامِ الْحَنِيفِ .

" You should frequently recite the Koran, for it is clear Arabic speech, which straightens the tongue and guides you in matters of your religion : the orthodox Islam. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. يَقْرَأُ الْمُسْلِمُونَ كَلَامَ اللهِ : الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ .

In this sentence the noun (الْقُرْآنَ) is identical with (كَلَامَ اللهِ) in meaning and can replace it. Thus we can also say :

يَقْرَأُ الْمُسْلِمُونَ الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ

(الْقُرْآنَ) is the substitute (اَلْبَدَلُ) and (كَلَامَ اللهِ) is the substituted for (اَلْمُبْدَلُ مِنْهُ) .

Note that (كَلَامَ) is in the accusative case because it is a direct object; the accusative case is here indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) . The substitute(الْقُرْآنَ) is also in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

2. فِي مَكَّةَ بَيْتُ اللهِ : الْكَعْبَةُ .

We can also say : فِي مَكَّةَ الْكَعْبَةُ

(الْكَعْبَةُ) is the substitute and (بَيْتُ اللهِ) is the substituted for . Note that (بَيْتُ) is in the nominative case because it is a retarded subject; the nominative case is here indicated by(اَلضَّمَّةُ) . The substitute (الْكَعْبَةُ) is also in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) .

3. أُنْزِلَ الْقُرْآنُ عَلَى خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ : مُحَمَّدٍ .

We can alao say: أُنْزِلَ الْقُرْآنُ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ

(مُحَمَّدٍ) is the substitute and (خَاتَمِ النَّبِيِّينَ) is the substituted for.

Note that (خَاتَمِ) is in the genitive case because it is preceded by the preposition (عَلَى); the genitive case is here indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ). The substitute (مُحَمَّدٍ) is also in the genitive case indicated here by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ).

4. The substitute and the substituted for agree in case.

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Fill in the blank spaces with suitable substitutes and underline the substituted for :

ا – قَالَ سَالِمٌ لِابْنِهِ . . . . .

ب – اِهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ . . . . . الَّذِينَ أَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ .

ج – أُنْزِلَتْ بَعْضُ السُّوَرِ عَلَى النَّبِيِّ فِي الْبَلْدَةِ الَّتِي نَشَأَ فِيهَا . . . . .

د – اَلْقُرْآنُ يَهْدِيكُمَا فِي أُمُورِ دِينِكُمَا . . . . . الْحَنِيفِ .

2. Fill in each of the following blank spaces with a suitable substituted for and underline the substitute in each sentence :

ا – قَالَ سَالِمٌ لِـ . . . . . نِهَادَ .

ب – تُقْرَأُ . . . . . الْأُولَى سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ فِي كُلِّ صَلَاةٍ .

ج – أُنْزِلَتْ بَعْضُ السُّوَرِ عَلَى النَّبِيِّ فِي ..... الَّتِي هَاجَرَ إِلَيْهَا :الْمَدِينَةِ.

د – أَكْثِرَا مِنْ قِرَاءَةِ . . . . . كَلَامِ اللهِ .

3. Underline the substitute and the substituted for indicating their agreement in case :

ا – تُحِبُّ نِهَادُ أُمَّهَا هِنْداً .

ب – سَافَرَ نَبِيلٌ إِلَى عَمِّهِ مَحْمُودٍ .

ج – يَزُورُ سَالِمٌ جَارَهُ رَاشِداً .

د – جَاءَ فَصْلُ الْأَمْطَارِ الشِّتَاءُ .

4. Fill in each of the following blank spaces with a suitable substitute chosen from those in brackets :

(سَلَّةِ – الصَّيْفَ – الرَّبِيعَ – الْإِسْكَنْدَرِيَّةِ)

ا – أُحِبُّ فَصْلَ الْأَزْهَارِ . . . . .

ب – قَضَيْتُ الصَّيْفَ فِي أَجْمَلِ مَصِيفٍ . . . . .

ج – رَمَيْتُ الْوَرَقَةَ فِي السَّلَّةِ . . . . . الْمُهْمَلَاتِ .

د – لَا أُحِبُّ فَصْلَ الْحَرِّ الشَّدِيدِ . . . . .

اَلدَّرْسُ السَّادِسُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety - Six

فِى السُّوقِ

At the Market

تُقَامُ الْأَسْوَاقُ فِى الْقُرَى .

Markets are held in villages .

وَلِكُلِّ قَرْيَةٍ يَوْمٌ فِى الْأُسْبُوعِ تُقَامُ فِيهِ السُّوقُ .

Each village has a day in the week when the market is held.

تُقَامُ السُّوقُ فِى مَكَانٍ فَسِيحٍ مِنَ الْقَرْيَةِ .

The market is held in a big place in the village.

وَفِى السُّوقِ أَقْسَامٌ مُخْتَلِفَةٌ :

The market has several sections :

قِسْمٌ لِلْمَاشِيَةِ ، وَقِسْمٌ لِلْحُبُوبِ ، وَقِسْمٌ لِلْخُضَرِ ،

a section for cattle, a section for cereals, a section for vegetables,

وَقِسْمٌ لِلْمَنْسُوجَاتِ ، وَقِسْمٌ لِأَدَوَاتِ الْبَيْتِ ،

a section for textiles, a section for house utensils,

وَقِسْمٌ لِأَدَوَاتِ الزِّرَاعَةِ ، وَقِسْمٌ لِلُعَبِ الْأَطْفَالِ .

a section for agricultural equipment, and a section for children's toys.

خَرَجَتْ فَلَّاحَةٌ إِلَى السُّوقِ وَمَعَهَا زَوْجُهَا .

A woman farmer went out to the market; her husband was with her.

وَوَضَعَ الزَّوْجُ عَلَى حِمَارِهِ إِرْدَباً مِنَ الْقَمْحِ .

The husband put an 'irdabb' of wheat on his donkey.

وَحَمَلَتِ الزَّوْجَةُ عَلَى رَأْسِهَا كَيْلَتَيْنِ ذُرَةً ، وَقَدَحاً أُرْزاً ؛

The wife carried two ' keilas ' of maize and a ' kadah ' of rice on her head,

وَأَمْسَكَتْ فِي يَدِها زَوْجاً مِنَ الدَّجَاجِ .

and held in her hand a pair of hens.

وَفِي السُّوقِ بَاعَ الزَّوْجُ مَا مَعَهُ ،

At the market the husband sold what he had,

وَبَاعَتِ الزَّوْجَةُ مَا مَعَهَا .

and the wife sold what she had.

قَالَ الزَّوْجُ لِزَوْجَتِهِ :

The husband said to his wife,

مَا الَّذِى نَحْتَاجُ إِلَيهِ مِنَ السُّوقِ ؟

" What do we need to buy at the market ? "

قَالَتِ الزَّوْجَةُ :

The wife said,

يَلْزَمُ لِإِبْرَاهِيمَ خَمْسَةُ أَمْتَارٍ نَسِيجاً .

" Ibrahim needs five metres of cloth.

وَيَلْزَمُ لِفَاطِمَةَ أَرْبَعَةُ أَمْتَارٍ حَرِيراً .

Fatimah needs four metres of silk.

وَنَحْتَاجُ فِي الْبَيْتِ إِلَى رِطْلٍ فُلْفُلاً ،

We need for our household a pound of pepper,

وَقَدَحٍ مِلْحاً ، وَكِيلُو بَطَاطِساً .

a 'kadah' of salt and a kilo of potatoes.

اِشْتَرَى الزَّوْجُ مَا يَحْتَاجُ إِلَيْهِ الْأَوْلَادُ وَالْبَيْتُ ،

The husband bought what the children and the house needed.

ثُمَّ اشْتَرَى لَهُ فَأْساً وَمِنْجَلاً ،

Then he bought himself a hoe and a sickle.

وَاشْتَرَى لِابْنِهِ الصَّغِيرِ صَفَّارَةً ،

He bought his little son a whistle.

وَعَادَ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ مَعَ زَوْجَتِهِ رَاضِياً .

He went back home with his wife satisfied.

بَاعَ مَا اسْتَغْنَى عَنْهُ ، وَاشْتَرَى مَا يَحْتَاجُ إِلَيْهِ .

He sold what he could do without, and bought what he needs.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. وَضَعَ الزَّوْجُ عَلَى حِمَارِهِ إِرْدَبًّا قَمْحاً .

The noun (إِرْدَبًّا) is a measure of capacity. The noun(قَمْحاً) specifies it indicating that the thing measured is wheat and not anything else.

So(قَمْحاً) is called the specifying noun(التَّمْيِيزُ) and(إِرْدَبًّا) the specified noun (اَلْمُمَيَّزُ).

Note that the specifying noun is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

2. يَلْزَمُ لِإِبْرَاهِيمَ خَمْسَةُ أَمْتَارٍ نَسِيجاً .

The noun (أَمْتَارٍ) is the plural form of the noun (مِتْرٌ) which is a measure of length. The noun (نَسِيجاً) specifies it. Note that the specifying noun is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ).

3. نَحْتَاجُ فِي الْبَيْتِ إِلَى رِطْلٍ فُلْفُلاً .

The noun (رِطْلٍ) is a measure of weight specified by the word (فُلْفُلاً).

Note that the specifying noun is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ).

4.

Nouns of capacity, length (space) or weight may be specified by a following noun. This noun is always in the accusative case.

In the following lesson you will learn another kind of specification: the specification of number.

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Indicate the specifying and specified nouns in each of the following sentences :

(١) حَمَلَتِ الزَّوْجَةُ عَلَى رَأْسِهَا كَيْلَتَيْنِ ذُرَةً ، وَقَدَحاً أُرْزاً .

(ب) يَلْزَمُ لِفَاطِمَةَ أَرْبَعَةُ أَمْتَارٍ حَرِيراً .

(ج) نَحْتَاجُ فِى الْبَيْتِ إِلَى قَدَحٍ مِلْحاً ، وَكِيلُو بَطَاطِساً .

2. Fill in each of the following blank spaces with a suitable specifying noun chosen from those in brackets:

(ذُرَةً – صُوفاً – عِنَباً – لَحْماً)

(١) يَزِنُ الْجَزَّارُ كِيلُو . . . . .

(ب) اَلْفَاكِهِىُّ يَزِنُ كِيلُو . . . . .

(ج) اِشْتَرَيْتُ مِنَ الدُّكَّانِ كَيْلَةً . . . . .

(د) اِشْتَرَيْتُ ثَلَاثَةَ أَمْتَارٍ . . . . .

3. Fill in each of the following blank spaces with a suitable specified noun :

(١) وَزَنَ الْفَاكِهِىُّ . . . . . تُفَّاحاً .

(ب) اِشْتَرَى أَبِى مِنَ السُّوقِ . . . . . ذُرَةً .

(ج) أَكَلْتُ الْيَوْمَ نِصْفَ . . . . . مَوْزاً .

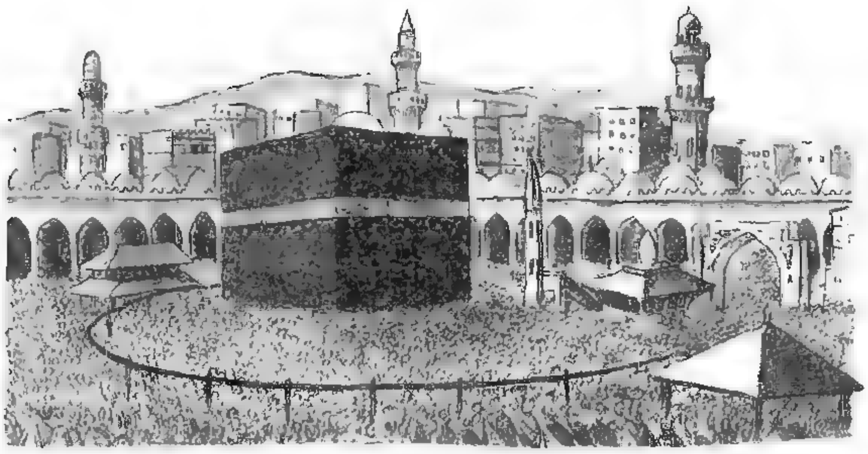
(جـ) يَحْتَاجُ أَخِي وَأُخْتِي إِلَى سَبْعَةِ . . . . نَسِيجاً .

4. Use the specifying and specified nouns in brackets in complete sentences :

(كَيْلَةٌ ذُرَةً) ـ (نِصْفُ كِيلُو طَمَاطِماً) ـ (كِيلُو خَوْخاً)

اَلدَّرْسُ السَّابِعُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety - Seven



مِنْ سِيرَةِ النَّبِيِّ

From the Biography of the Prophet

وُلِدَ مُحَمَّدٌ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ فِي مَكَّةَ بِالْحِجَازِ عَامَ خَمْسِمِائَةٍ وَسَبْعِينَ بَعْدَ الْمِيلَادِ (٥٧٠ م) .

Muhammed (may God bless and greet him) was born in Mecca in the Hejaz in the year five hundred and seventy A. D. (570 A. D.)

وَكَانَ أَبَوَاهُ مِنْ بَنِي هَاشِمٍ مِنْ قَبِيلَةِ قُرَيْشٍ .

His parents belonged to the clan of Bani Hashem of the tribe of Quraish.

مَاتَ أَبُوهُ عَبْدُ اللهِ بْنُ عَبْدِ الْمُطَّلِبِ ، وَهُوَ فِي بَطْنِ أُمِّهِ آمِنَةَ بِنْتِ وَهْبٍ .

His father, Abdullah the son of Abdul-Muttalib, died while he (the prophet) was in the womb of his mother Aminah, the daughter of Wahb.

وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ سِتَّ سَنَوَاتٍ مَاتَتْ أُمُّهُ ، فَكَفَلَهُ جَدُّهُ عَبْدُ الْمُطَّلِبِ ابْنُ هَاشِمٍ .

When he was six years old, his mother died, and his grandfather Abdul-Muttalib, the son of Hashem, took charge of him.

وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ ثَمَانِيَ سِنِينَ مَاتَ جَدُّهُ ، فَكَفَلَهُ عَمُّهُ أَبُو طَالِبٍ .

When he was eight years old, his grandfather died, and his uncle, Abu-Talib, took charge of him.

اشْتَغَلَ النَّبِيُّ فِي شَبَابِهِ بِالرَّعْيِ وَالتِّجَارَةِ .

In his youth, the prophet worked as shepherd and merchant.

وَلَمَّا بَلَغَ خَمْساً وَعِشْرِينَ سَنَةً تَزَوَّجَ السَّيِّدَةَ خَدِيجَةَ بِنْتَ خُوَيْلِدٍ .

When he was twenty-five years old, he married Khadijah, the daughter of Khuwailid.

كَانَ النَّبِيُّ يَتَعَبَّدُ فِي غَارِ حِرَاءٍ خَارِجَ مَكَّةَ ، مِنْ كُلِّ سَنَةٍ شَهْراً وَاحِداً .

The Prophet used to worship (God) in the cave of Hira' outside of Mecca for one month each year.

نَزَلَ الْوَحْيُ عَلَى النَّبِيِّ فِي حِرَاءٍ ، وَعُمْرُهُ أَرْبَعُونَ عَاماً .

The Prophet was revealed to in Hira' when he was forty years old.

كَانَ ذَلِكَ فِي لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ مِنْ شَهْرِ رَمَضَانَ .

That was on the Night of Judgement in the month of Ramadan.

قَالَ اللهُ تَعَالَى (سُورَةُ الْقَدْرِ ١ ـ ٣) :

God (may He be exalted) says (Surah of Judgement, verses 1 - 3) :

« إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ فِي لَيْلَةِ الْقَدْرِ . وَمَا أَدْرَاكَ مَا لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ . لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَلْفِ شَهْرٍ . »

" Verily, we sent it down on the Night of Judgement. And what shall make thee know what the Night of Judgement is ? The Night of Judgement is better than a thousand months. "

دَعَا النَّبِيُّ قُرَيْشاً إِلَى الْإِسْلَامِ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ عَشْرِ سَنَوَاتٍ .

The Prophet called Quraish to Islam for more than ten years.

ولَمَّا اشْتَدَّ أَذَى الْكُفَّارِ ، هَاجَرَ هُوَ وَأَصْحَابُهُ إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ عَامَ سِتِّمَائَةٍ وَاثْنَيْنِ وَعِشْرِينَ بَعْدَ الْمِيلَادِ (٦٢٢ م) .

When the misbelievers' harm increased he and his companions emigrated to Medina in the year six hundred and twenty - two A. D. (622 A. D.)

كَانَتِ الْهِجْرَةُ بِدَايَةَ انْتِشَارِ الْإِسْلَامِ فِي شِبْهِ الْجَزِيرَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ ثُمَّ فِي الْعَالَمِ كُلِّهِ .

The Hijra (Emigration) marked the beginning of the spread of Islam in the Arabian peninsula and then all over the world.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. بَلَغَ سِتَّ سَنَوَاتٍ . بَلَغَ ثَمَانِيَ سِنِينَ . دَعَا أَكْثَرَ مِنْ عَشْرِ سَنَوَاتٍ .

In each of these sentences the counted (اَلْمَعْدُودُ) or the specification of number (تَمْيِيزُ الْعَدَدِ) is a plural in the genitive case. This case is indicated by (الْكَسْرَةُ) in the first and third sentences because the noun (سَنَوَات) in each is a sound feminine plural, and by (اَلْيَاءُ) in the second sentence because the noun (سِنِين) is treated as a sound *masculine* plural.

Rule : Numerals from three to ten (3 - 10) require a specification of number in the plural form and the genitive case.

2. When the specification of number is the numeral one hundred (اَلْمِائَةُ) it does not follow the above - mentioned rule; (اَلْمِائَةُ) must occur in the singular form as in the following sentences:

ا – وُلِدَ النَّبِيُّ عَامَ خَمْسِمَائَةٍ وَسَبْعِينَ .

ب – هَاجَرَ النَّبِيُّ عَامَ سِتِّمَائَةٍ وَاثْنَيْنِ وَعِشْرِينَ .

The specification of number after (خَمْسِ) in the first sentence and (سِتِّ) in the second is (مِائَةٍ) which is singular and in the genitive case indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ) . It is wrong to use the plural (مِئَات) in such cases; one should not say : خَمْسُ مِئَاتٍ ، سِتُّ مِئَاتٍ .

3. (ا) بَلَغَ خَمْساً وَعِشْرِينَ سَنَةً .

(ب) عُمْرُهُ أَرْبَعُونَ عَاماً .

The specification of number in each of these two sentences is a singular in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) : (سَنَةً) in the first sentence and (عَاماً) in the second.

Rule :

Numerals from eleven to ninety - nine (11 - 99) require a specification of number in the singular form and in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

4. ا – فِي الدُّكَّانِ مِائَةُ صُنْدُوقٍ .

ب – لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ خَيْرٌ مِنْ أَلْفِ شَهْرٍ .

The numerals one hundred (100) and one thousand (1000) require a singular specification of number in the genitive case indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ) . Examples are (صُنْدُوقٍ) in the first sentence and (شَهْرٍ) in the second.

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Indicate the specification of number and its kind in each of the following sentences :

(ا) فِي الْكِتَابِ ثَلَثُمِائَةِ صَفْحَةٍ .

(ب) وَفِي كُلِّ صَفْحَةٍ سِتَّةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ سَطْراً .

(ج) وَفِي كُلِّ سَطْرٍ عَشْرُ كَلِمَاتٍ .

(د) فِي الْحَظِيرَةِ سِتُّ دَجَاجَاتٍ .

(ه) وَضَعَتْ كُلُّ دَجَاجَةٍ ثَلَاثَ بَيْضَاتٍ .

(و) فِي الْحَظِيرَةِ ثَمَانِي عَشْرَةَ بَيْضَةً .

2. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a suitable specification of number :

(ا) فِي الْأُسْبُوعِ سَبْعَةُ . . . . .

(ب) فِي الشَّهْرِ ثَلَاثُونَ . . . . .

(ج) فِي السَّنَةِ اثْنَا عَشَرَ . . . . .

(د) فِي السَّنَةِ ثَلَثُمِائَةٍ وَخَمْسَةٌ وَسِتُّونَ . . . . .

(ه) فِي الْيَوْمِ أَرْبَعٌ وَعِشْرُونَ . . . . .

(م) فِي السَّاعَةِ سِتُّونَ . . . . .

3. Write the following numerals in words :

١٠٠ – ٢٠٠ – ٣٠٠ – ٤٠٠ – ٧٠٠ – ٨٠٠ – ٩٠٠ – ١٠٠٠ – ٢٠٠٠

4. Answer the following questions :

(ا) كَمْ كِتَاباً فِى مَكْتَبَتِكَ ؟

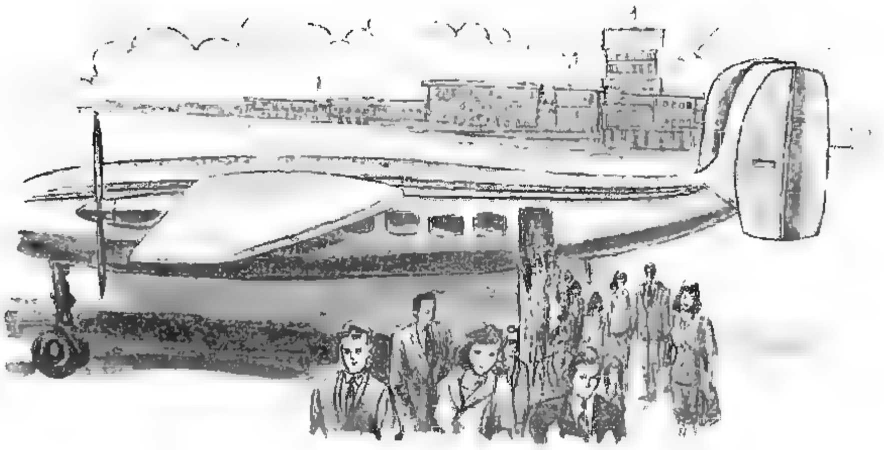
(ب) كَمْ سَاعَةً تَنَامُ فِى الْيَوْمِ ؟

(جـ) كَمْ مِتْراً ارْتِفَاعُ بُرْجِ الْقَاهِرَةِ ؟

(د) كَمْ رَقْماً فِى سَاعَتِكَ ؟

اَلدَّرْسُ الثَّامِنُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety - Eight



فِى الْمَطَارِ

At the Airport

قَرُبَ وُصُولُ الطَّائِرَةِ الْقَادِمَةِ مِنَ الْهِنْدِ .

The aeroplane coming from India was expected to arrive shortly.

وَقَفَ الْأَقَارِبُ وَالْأَصْدِقَاءُ يَنْتَظِرُونَ الرُّكَّابَ .

Relatives and friends stood waiting for the passengers.

كَانَتِ الْمَمَرَّاتُ فِى الْمَطَارِ مَحْجُوزَةً إِلَّا مَمَرًّا وَاحِداً .

The airport runways were closed except one .

أُعْطِيَتِ الْإِشَارَةُ إِلَى الطَّائِرَةِ لِتَهْبِطَ فِى الْمَمَرِّ .

Signal was given to the aeroplane to land in the runway.

اِقْتَرَبَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ مِنَ الْمَطَارِ وَهَبَطَتْ فِى الْمَمَرِّ .

The aeroplane approached the airport and landed in the runway.

وَقَفَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ فِي الْمَكَانِ الْمُخَصَّصِ لَهَا .

The aeroplane stopped at the place kept for it.

سَارَعَتْ سَيَّارَتَانِ إِلَى الطَّائِرَةِ لِحَمْلِ الرُّكَّابِ وَالْحَقَائِبِ .

Two cars hurried to the aeroplane to carry the passengers and the luggage.

وَأَتَى الْعُمَّالُ بِسُلَّمِ الرُّكَّابِ إِلَى بَابِ الطَّائِرَةِ .

Workers brought the passenger steps up to the door of the aeroplane.

نَزَلَ رُكَّابُ الطَّائِرَةِ إِلَّا الطَّيَّارَ وَمُسَاعِدَيْهِ .

All those on board the aeroplane got off except the pilot and his two assistants.

وَحَمَلَتْ سَيَّارَةٌ الرُّكَّابَ إِلَى مَبْنَى الْمَطَارِ .

A car carried the passengers to the airport building.

وَهُنَاكَ قَابَلَهُمْ مُوَظَّفُو الْجَوَازَاتِ وَالْجَمَارِكِ .

There they were met by the passport and customs officials.

فُحِصَتِ الْجَوَازَاتُ ، وَفُتِّشَتِ الْحَقَائِبُ .

The passports were examined and the luggage was checked.

سُمِحَ لِلرُّكَّابِ بِالْخُرُوجِ مِنَ الْمَطَارِ إِلَّا رَاكِبَيْنِ لَمْ يَسْتَوْفِيَا جَمِيعَ الْإِجْرَاءَاتِ .

The passengers were permitted to leave the airport except two passengers who had not met all regulations.

وَعِنْدَ بَابِ الْخُرُوجِ اسْتُقْبِلَ الرُّكَّابُ بِالتَّحِيَّةِ .

At the exit gate the passengers were welcomed.

خَرَجَ الْمُسْتَقْبِلُونَ إِلَّا الْمُنْتَظِرِينَ لِلرَّاكِبَيْنِ الْمُتَخَلِّفَيْنِ .

People who had come to welcome the passengers left except those waiting for the two delayed passengers.

وَبَعْدَ فَتْرَةٍ خَرَجَ هَذَانِ الراكِبَانِ فَاسْتَقْبَلَهُمَا أَصْدِقَاؤُهُمَا بِالتَّحِيَّةِ .

After some time, these two passengers went out and they were greeted by their friends.

رَكِبَ الرُّكَّابُ وَأَصْدِقَاؤُهُمُ السَّيَّارَاتِ إِلَى مَنَازِلِهِمْ أَوْ إِلَى الْفَنَادِقِ .

Passengers and friends took cars to their homes or to hotels.

إِنَّ مَطَارَ الْقَاهِرَةِ الدَّوْلِيَّ مِنْ أَعْظَمِ مَطَارَاتِ الْعَالَمِ .

Cairo International Airport is one of the greatest airports in the world.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. نَزَلَ رُكَّابُ الطَّائِرَةِ إِلَّا الطَّيَّارَ .

(إِلَّا) is an exceptive particle. The excepted noun is (الطَّيَّارَ) and the noun excepted from is (رُكَّابُ) . The sentence is affirmative. The excepted noun is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

2. سُمِحَ لِلرُّكَّابِ بِالْخُرُوجِ إِلَّا رَاكِبَيْنِ .

The excepted noun is (رَاكِبَيْنِ) and the noun excepted from is الرُّكَّابِ. The sentence is affirmative. The excepted noun, which is a dual, is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْيَاءُ) .

3. خَرَجَ الْمُسْتَقْبِلُونَ إِلَّا الْمُنْتَظِرِينَ لِلرَّاكِبَيْنِ الْمُتَخَلِّفَيْنِ .

The excepted noun is الْمُنْتَظِرِينَ and the noun excepted from is الْمُسْتَقْبِلُونَ . The sentence is affirmative. The excepted noun, which is a sound masculine plural, is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْيَاءُ) .

4. قَلَّمَ الْبُسْتَانِيُّ الْأَشْجَارَ إِلَّا شَجَرَاتِ الْمِشْمِشِ .

(The gardener pruned the trees except the apricot trees.)

The excepted noun is (شَجَرَاتِ) and the noun excepted from is (اَلْأَشْجَارُ) . The sentence is affirmative. The excepted noun, which is a sound feminine plural, is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ) .

5. In negative sentences, the excepted noun is treated in certain other ways which will be discussed in Book Three.

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the excepted, the excepted from and the exceptive particle in the following sentences:

(ا) رَكِبَ الْمُسَافِرُونَ الْقِطَارَ إِلَّا مُسَافِراً .

(ب) حَضَرَ التَّلَامِيذُ إِلَّا تِلْمِيذَيْنِ .

(جـ) وَزَّعَ سَاعِي الْبَرِيدِ الرَّسَائِلَ إِلَّا رِسَالَةً .

(د) قَطَفْتُ أَزْهَارَ الشَّجَرَةِ إِلَّا زَهْرَةً .

2. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a suitable excepted noun chosen from those in brackets and mark its case ending:

(شَمْعَة – صَدِيق – قِصَّة – كِتَاب)

(ا) قَرَأْتُ الْقِصَصَ الَّتِي اشْتَرَاهَا أَبِي إِلَّا . . . . .

(ب) جَلَّدْتُ كُتُبَ مَكْتَبَتِي إِلَّا . . . . .

(جـ) حَضَرَ الْأَصْدِقَاءُ عِيدَ مِيلَادِي إِلَّا . . . . .

(د) انْطَفَأَتِ الشَّمَعَاتُ إِلَّا . . . . .

3. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a suitable excepted - from noun chosen from those *in* brackets :

(مَصَابِيحُ – الْأَكْوَابَ – الْفَلَّاحُونَ – التَّلَامِيذُ – أَزْهَارُ)

(ا) زَرَعَ . . . . . حُقُولَهُمْ إِلَّا فَلَّاحاً .

(ب) نَجَحَ . . . . . فِي الِامْتِحَانِ إِلَّا تِلْمِيذَيْنِ .

(جـ) أَضَاءَتْ . . . . . الشَّارِعِ إِلَّا مِصْبَاحاً .

(د) تَفَتَّحَتْ . . . . . الْحَدِيقَةِ إِلَّا زَهَرَاتِ الْفُلِّ .

(هـ) غَسَلَ الْخَادِمُ . . . . . إِلَّا كُوباً .

4. Use each of the following nouns as an excepted noun in an affirmative sentence and mark its case ending :

سَيَّارَة – شَارِع – كِتَاب – سِتَارَة .

اَلدَّرْسُ التَّاسِعُ وَالتِّسْعُونَ

Lesson Ninety-Nine

مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ وَالْحَدِيثِ

Extracts from the Koran and the Tradition

قَالَ تَعَالَى : — « قَالَ يَانُوحُ إِنَّهُ لَيْسَ مِنْ أَهْلِكَ » (هُودٌ ، الْآيَةُ ٤٦).

He said, " Oh Noah ! he is not of thy people. " (Hûd, 46)

— « قَالُوا يَاهُودُ مَا جِئْتَنَا بِبَيِّنَةٍ » (هُودٌ ، الْآيَةُ ٥٣)

They said, " O Hûd ! thou hast not come to us with a manifest sign. "
(Hûd, 53)

— « وَقَالُوا يَاصَالِحُ ائْتِنَا بِمَا تَعِدُنَا إِنْ كُنْتَ مِنَ الْمُرْسَلِينَ »
(اَلْأَعْرَافُ ، الْآيَةُ ٧٧)

And they said, " Oh Salih ! bring us what thou didst threaten us with, if thou art of those who are sent. " (Al - Aarâf, 77)

— « وَقِيلَ يَاأَرْضُ ابْلَعِي مَاءَكِ وَيَاسَمَاءُ أَقْلِعِي » (هُودٌ ، الْآيَةُ ٤٤)

And it was said, " O earth ! swallow down thy water ! " and, " O heaven ! hold ! "
(Hûd, 44)

– « يَا جِبَالُ أَوِّبِي مَعَهُ » (سَبَأٌ ، الْآيَةُ ١٠)

O ye mountains ! echo (God's praises) with him ! (Saba, 10)

– « اعْمَلُوا آلَ دَاوُدَ شُكْراً » (سَبَأٌ ، الْآيَةُ ١٣)

Work, O ye family of David ! thankfully. (Saba, 13)

– « يَانِسَاءَ النَّبِيِّ لَسْتُنَّ كَأَحَدٍ مِنَ النِّسَاءِ » (اَلْأَحْزَابُ ، الْآيَةُ ٣٢)

O ye women of the prophet ! ye are not like any other women. (Confederates, 32)

– « رَبَّنَا افْتَحْ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَ قَوْمِنَا بِالْحَقِّ » (اَلْأَعْرَافُ ، الْآيَةُ ٨٩)

O our Lord ! open between us and between our people *in truth*. (Al- Aaraf, 89)

– « يَأَيُّهَا النَّاسُ اذْكُرُوا نِعْمَةَ اللهِ عَلَيْكُمْ » (فَاطِرٌ ، الْآيَةُ ٣)

O ye *folk* ! remember the favours of God towards you. (Originator, 3)

– « قُلْ يَأَيُّهَا الْكَافِرُونَ . لاَ أَعْبُدُ مَا تَعْبُدُونَ » (اَلْكَافِرُونَ ، الْآيَتَانِ ١ ، ٢)

Say, " O ye misbelievers ! I do not worship what ye worship. " (Misbelievers, 1 - 2)

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللهِ صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ : « يَا بِلَالُ أَذِّنْ فِي النَّاسِ أَنْ يَصُومُوا غَداً » .

The Prophet (may God bless *and* greet *him*) said, " O Bilal ! Proclaim to the people that they should fast tomorrow. "

وَقَالَ : « يَامُعَاذُ أَحْسِنْ خُلُقَكَ لِلنَّاسِ » .

He also said, " O Mu'âdh ! Be *good* to people. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES اَلْمُلاَحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. « قَالَ يَانُوحُ إِنَّهُ لَيْسَ مِنْ أَهْلِكَ » .

The 'call' in this sentence is to a proper noun (نُوحُ) . Note that the final vowel is (اَلضَّمَّةُ) , which is (as you know) one of the signs of the nominative case.

2. « وَقِيلَ يَا أَرْضُ ابْلَعِي مَاءَكِ وَيَا سَمَاءُ أَقْلِعِي » .

The call in this sentence is to both (اَلْأَرْضُ) and (اَلسَّمَاءُ) which are 'intended' indefinite nouns (نَكِرَتَانِ مَقْصُودَتَانِ) . Note that the final vowel of each is (اَلضَّمَّةُ) .

3. Note that the vocative in each of the previous sentences is not a construct.

4. (ا) يَامُحَمَّدَانِ اقْرَءَا الْقُرْآنَ .

(ب) يَا فَلاَّحَانِ احْصُدَا الْقَمْحَ .

The vocative in sentence (ا) is a proper noun and in sentence (ب) an intended indefinite noun (نَكِرَةٌ مَقْصُودَةٌ) . In each sentence the vocative is not a construct. It has an (أَلِفٌ) (مُحَمَّدَانِ ـ فَلاَّحَانِ) which is (as you know) the sign of the nominative case of the dual.

5. (ا) يَامُحَمَّدُونَ اقْرَءُوا الْقُرْآنَ .

(ب) يَا فَلاَّحُونَ احْصُدُوا الْقَمْحَ .

The vocative in the sentences (ا) is a proper noun and in the sentence (ب) an intended indefinite noun.

Each vocative is not a construct. It has a (وَاوٌ) (مُحَمَّدُونَ – فَلَّاحُونَ) which is (as you know) the sign of the nominative case of the sound masculine plural.

6. *Rule*:

The vocative bears (اَلضَّمَّةُ) *or any other sign of the nominative case if it is a proper noun or an intended indefinite* noun, provided that it is not a construct. (اَلضَّمَّةُ) here is not accompanied by nunation : (نُوحُ) not (نُوحٌ) .

7. يَا نِسَاءَ النَّبِيِّ .

The vocative (نِسَاءَ) is a construct, the genitive of which is (النَّبِيِّ) .Note that the vocative is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) .

The vocative assumes the accusative case whenever it is a construct. The accusative case *may be indicated by* (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) *as in* (يَابَائِعَ الْخُضَرِ) (O greengrocer !) or by any other sign of the accusative case as in (يَابَائِعَيِ الْخُضَرِ) (O you two greengrocers !) and as in (يَا بَائِعِي الْخُضَرِ) (O you greengrocers !) .In the last two examples, the sign of the accusative case is (اَلْيَاءُ) because the vocative is either a dual or a sound masculine plural.

8. يَـأَيُّهَا (يَا أَيُّهَا) الْكَافِرُونَ .

The vocative (الْكَافِرُونَ) has the definite article (ال) .In such a case (أَيُّهَا) intervenes between the vocative particle (يَا) and the definite vocative (الْكَافِرُونَ) .If the definite vocative is feminine, (أَيَّتُهَا) is used as in : يَـأَيَّتُهَا (يَا أَيَّتُهَا) الْمَرْأَةُ (O you woman !)

9. « رَبَّنَا افْتَحْ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَ قَوْمِنَا بِالْحَقِّ » .

The vocative particle can be dispensed with as in this verse. The vocative (رَبَّ) is in the accusative case indicated by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ) because it is a construct, the genitive being the pronominal suffix (نَا).

10. Other vocative particles than (يَا) are (أَ) ، (أَيَا) and (أَيْ).

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Fill in each of the blank spaces with a vocative particle and a vocative :

(ا) « . . . . . . أَوِّبِي مَعَهُ »

(ب) « قَالُوا . . . . مَا جِئْتَنَا بِبَيِّنَةٍ »

(ج) « . . . . اذْكُرُوا نِعْمَةَ اللهِ عَلَيْكُمْ »

(د) « . . . . أَحْسِنْ خُلُقَكَ لِلنَّاسِ »

2. Indicate the vocative and its case ending in each of the following sentences :

(ا) « وَقَالُوا يَا صَالِحُ ائْتِنَا بِمَا تَعِدُنَا »

(ب) « اعْمَلُوا آلَ دَاوُدَ شُكْراً »

(ج) « يَا بِلَالُ أَذِّنْ فِي النَّاسِ »

3. Put each of these particles يَا – يَاأَيُّهَا – يَاأَيَّتُهَا in its proper place in the following sentences :

(ا) . . . . الْجَزَّارُ ، هَاتِ كِيلُو مِنَ اللَّحْمِ الصَّغِيرِ .

(ب) . . . . بَائِعَ الْخُضَرِ ، هَلْ عِنْدَكَ خُضَرٌ طَازَجَةٌ ؟

(ج) . . . . الْبِنْتُ ، سَاعِدِي أُمَّكِ فِي أَعْمَالِ الْبَيْتِ .

4. Indicate the vocative and its case ending in the following sentences :

(ا) كَمْ يَوْماً قَضَيْتَ فِي الْقَاهِرَةِ يَا خَلِيلُ ؟

(ب) هَلْ مَعَكَ خِطَابَاتٌ يَا سَاعِيَ الْبَرِيدِ ؟

(ج) يَـأَيُّهَا الْعَرَبُ حَافِظُوا عَلَى اللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

(د) قَالَتْ هِنْدُ : شُكْراً يَا وِدَادُ .

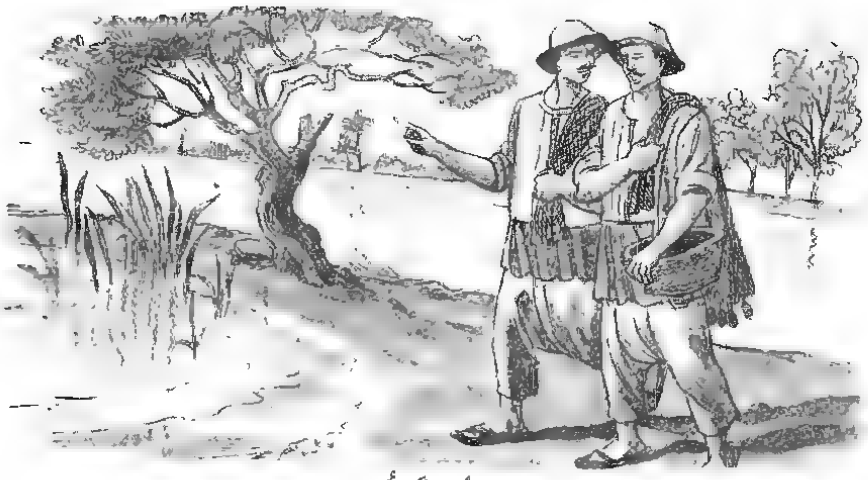
(هـ) يَـأَيُّهَا الصَّيْدَلِيُّ ، هَلْ عِنْدَكَ هَذَا الدَّوَاءُ ؟

5. Introduce each of the following nouns with a vocative particle. Make any necessary changes:

نَبِيلٌ – اَلتِّلْمِيذُ – بُسْتَانِيُّ الْحَدِيقَةِ – مُؤَذِّنَانِ – مُهَنْدِسُونَ – فَلَّاحُو الْقَرْيَةِ .

اَلدَّرْسُ الْمِائَةُ

Lesson One Hundred



عَاقِبَةُ التَّرَدُّدِ

The Consequence of Hesitation

مَرَّ صَيَّادَانِ بِبِرْكَةِ مَاءٍ .

Two fishermen passed by a pond (of water) .

قَالَ أَحَدُهُمَا لِزَمِيلِهِ : اَلْبِرْكَةُ سَمَكُهَا كَثِيرٌ .

One of them said to his fellow (fisherman), " There is plenty of fish in the pond. "

فَقَالَ الْآخَرُ : اَلنَّهْرُ سَمَكُهُ أَكْثَرُ .

The other one said, " There is more fish in the river,

وَالصَّيَّادُونَ فِيهِ رِزْقُهُمْ وَاسِعٌ .

and there fishermen have plenty to get.

نَصْطَادُ مِنَ النَّهْرِ أَوَّلاً ثُمَّ مِنَ الْبِرْكَةِ .

Let's fish in the river first, and then in the pond. "

وَكَانَ فِي الْبِرْكَةِ ثَلَاثُ سَمَكَاتٍ .

There were three fish in the pond.

قَالَتِ السَّمَكَةُ الْكُبْرَى لِأُخْتَيْهَا :

The eldest fish said to her two sisters,

هَلْ سَمِعْتُمَا ؟

" Have you heard ?

اَلصَّيَّادَانِ حَدِيثُهُمَا مُخِيفٌ .

The fishermen's conversation is frightening;

فَيَجِبُ أَنْ نُفَكِّرَ بِسُرْعَةٍ .

we must therefore think fast. "

قَالَتِ السَّمَكَتَانِ : أَنْتِ عَقْلُكِ رَاجِحٌ ، وَتَفْكِيرُكِ سَلِيمٌ .
وَالْأَمْرُ لَكِ .

The two fish said, " You have a good mind and your thinking is sound; it is for you to decide. "

قَالَتِ السَّمَكَةُ الْكَبِيرَةُ : يَجِبُ أَنْ نَهْرُبَ .

The eldest fish said, " We must escape .

بِجِوَارِ بِرْكَتِنَا غَدِيرٌ صَغِيرٌ ،

There is a small stream by our pond;

وَالْهُرُوبُ إِلَيْهِ طَرِيقُهُ سَهْلٌ ،

the escape to it is an easy job.

وَلَيْسَ أَمَامَنَا وَقْتٌ طَوِيلٌ ،

We have not got much time,

وَالصَّيَّادُونَ شِبَاكُهُمْ مَتِينَةٌ .

and the fishermen's nets are strong."

وَلَمْ تَتَرَدَّدِ السَّمَكَةُ الْكُبْرَى ، وَقَفَزَتْ إِلَى الْغَدِيرِ ،

The eldest fish did not hesitate and jumped into the stream.

وَبَقِيَتِ السَّمَكَتَانِ تُفَكِّرَانِ .

The other two fish stayed behind thinking.

قَالَتِ السَّمَكَةُ الْوُسْطَى : اسْمَعِى يَا أُخْتِى ،

The middle fish said, " Listen, sister.

اَلْأَخَوَاتُ الْكَبِيرَاتُ نَصَائِحُهُنَّ صَائِبَةٌ .

Elder sisters give sound advice."

ثُمَّ قَفَزَتْ هِيَ الْأُخْرَى إِلَى الْغَدِيرِ .

Then she also jumped into the stream.

وَبَقِيَتِ السَّمَكَةُ الصُّغْرَى فِى البِرْكَةِ .

The youngest fish remained in the pond.

وَبَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ عَادَ الصَّيَّادَانِ مِنَ النَّهْرِ ،

After a while the two fishermen returned from the river.

وَنَشَرَا شَبَكَتَيْهِمَا فِى الْبِرْكَةِ ، فَوَقَعَتِ السَّمَكَةُ الصُّغْرَى فِى إِحْدَاهُمَا ،

They spread their two nets in the pond. The youngest fish was caught in one of them.

وَعَرَفَتْ أَخِيراً أَنَّ التَّرَدُّدَ عَاقِبَتُهُ وَخِيمَةٌ .

She knew at last that the consequence of hesitation is perilous.

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

In Part Two you learnt that the *predicate* in the nominal sentence may be singular, dual or plural. It may also be an adverbial or a prepositional phrase. This lesson introduces another kind of predicate.

1. اَلنَّهْرُ سَمَكُهُ أَكْثَرُ .

This is a nominal sentence consisting of a subject and a predicate. The subject is the masculine singular noun (اَلنَّهْرُ) and the predicate is (سَمَكُهُ أَكْثَرُ) .

Note that the predicate is itself an independent nominal sentence consisting of the subject (سَمَكُهُ) and the predicate (أَكْثَرُ) . Note also that the predicate sentence contains the pronoun (اَلْهَاءُ) in the word (سَمَكُهُ). This pronoun refers to the subject (اَلنَّهْرُ) and agrees with it in being singular masculine. Such a pronoun is called the referent (اَلْعَائِدُ) ; it links the predicate sentence with the subject.

2. اَلْبِرْكَةُ سَمَكُهَا كَثِيرٌ .

This is also a nominal sentence consisting of a subject and a predicate. The subject is the feminine singular noun (اَلْبِرْكَةُ) and the predicate is the independent sentence (سَمَكُهَا كَثِيرٌ) which consists of the subject (سَمَكُهَا) and the predicate (كَثِيرٌ). The referent here is (هَا) in the word (سَمَكُهَا) ; it agrees with the subject (اَلْبِرْكَةُ) in being singular feminine.

3. اَلصَّيَّادَانِ حَدِيثُهُمَا مُخِيفٌ .

The subject is the noun (اَلصَّيَّادَانِ) . It is dual and in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْأَلِفُ) . The predicate is the nominal sentence (حَدِيثُهُمَا مُخِيفٌ) . The referent is the third person dual pronoun (هُمَا)

in (حَدِيثُهُمَا). It agrees with the subject (الصَّيَّادَان) in being dual.

4. اَلصَّيَّادُونَ شِبَاكُهُمْ مَتِينَةٌ .

The subject is the noun (اَلصَّيَّادُونَ). It is a sound masculine plural in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْوَاو). The predicate is the nominal sentence (شِبَاكُهُمْ مَتِينَةٌ). The linking pronoun is the third person masculine plural pronoun (هُمْ) in (شِبَاكُهُمْ). It agrees with the subject (اَلصَّيَّادُونَ) in being masculine plural.

5. اَلْأَخَوَاتُ الْكَبِيرَاتُ نَصَائِحُهُنَّ صَائِبَةٌ .

The subject (اَلْأَخَوَاتُ) is a sound feminine plural noun in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّة). The word (اَلْكَبِيرَاتُ) qualifies the subject. The nominal sentence (نَصَائِحُهُنَّ صَائِبَةٌ) is the predicate. The linking pronoun is the third person feminine plural pronoun (هُنَّ) in (نَصَائِحُهُنَّ). It agrees with the subject (اَلْأَخَوَاتُ) in being feminine plural.

***Rule*:**

The predicate may be a nominal sentence. In this case it *should* contain a pronoun that *refers to* the subject and agrees with it in gender (masculine or feminine) and in number (singular, dual ot plural).

EXERCISES — تمرينات

1. Indicate the predicate sentence and the referent in each of the following sentences :

(ا) اَلصَّيَّادُونَ فِي النَّهْرِ رِزْقُهُمْ وَاسِعٌ .

(ب) أَنْتِ عَقْلُكِ رَاجِحٌ .

(جـ) اَلْهُرُوبُ طَرِيقُهُ سَهْلٌ .

(د) اَلتَّرَدُّدُ عَاقِبَتُهُ وَخِيمَةٌ .

(هـ) أَنْتُمَا تَفْكِيرُكُمَا سَلِيمٌ .

2. Provide a suitable linking pronoun in the predicate sentence in each of the following sentences :

(ا) اَلْجَامِعَةُ كُلِّيَّاتـ . . . . كَثِيرَةٌ .

(ب) بِلَادُنَا آثَارُ . . . . عَظِيمَةٌ .

(جـ) اَلْمُغَنِّيَاتُ صَوْتُـ . . . . . جَمِيلٌ .

(د) اَلْفَلَّاحُونَ عَمَلُـ . . . . مُتْعِبٌ .

(هـ) اَلْوَرْدَتَانِ رَائِحَتُـ . . . . . جَمِيلَةٌ .

3. طَعَامٌ ـ بَابٌ ـ أَصْنَافٌ ـ عَمَلٌ ـ زُجَاجٌ ـ أَسْعَارٌ .

Put each of these nouns in its proper place in the following sentences. Suffix a suitable linking pronoun to each :

(ا) اَلطَّعَامُ . . . . لَذِيذَةٌ وَ . . . . مُنَاسِبَةٌ .

(ب) اَلْمَطْعَمَانِ . . . . وَاسِعٌ وَ . . . . نَظِيفٌ .

(جـ) اَلطَّبَّاخُونَ . . . . لَذِيذٌ .

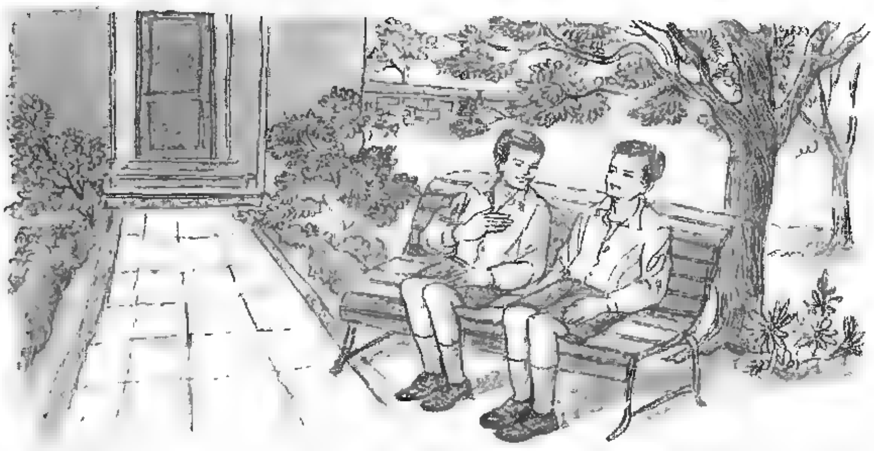
(د) اَلْفَلَّاحَاتُ . . . فِى الْبَيْتِ وَالْحَقْلِ .

4. اَلْمُمَثِّلُ تَمْثِيلُهُ رَائِعٌ .

Make this sentence refer to the feminine singular, the masculine dual, and the feminine plural. Make any necessary changes.

اَلدَّرْسُ الْوَاحِدُ بَعْدَ الْمِائَةِ

Lesson One Hundred and One



اَلرَّبِيعُ

Spring

أَحْمَدُ زَارَ صَدِيقَهُ نَبِيلاً ، فِي يَوْمٍ مِنْ أَيَّامِ الرَّبِيعِ .

Ahmad visited his friend Nabil on a spring day.

اَلصَّدِيقَانِ جَلَسَا فِي حَدِيقَةِ الْبَيْتِ .

The two friends sat in the house garden.

أَحْمَدُ أَعْجَبَهُ جَمَالُ الْأَشْجَارِ وَالْأَزْهَارِ .

Ahmad admired the beauty of the trees and the flowers.

فَقَالَ لِصَدِيقِهِ : اُنْظُرْ يَا صَدِيقِى ، اَلْأَشْجَارُ تَكْتَسِى بِوَرَقِهَا الْأَخْضَرِ .

He said to his friend, " Look, my friend ! The trees are clad with their green leaves.

وَالْأَزْهَارُ تَخْتَلِفُ أَلْوَانُهَا : مِنْهَا الْأَحْمَرُ ، وَمِنْهَا الْأَصْفَرُ ، وَمِنْهَا الْأَبْيَضُ .

The flowers have various colours : red, yellow and white.

اَلْحَدِيقَةُ كُلُّهَا رَائِعَةٌ .

The whole garden is wonderful."

قَالَ نَبِيلٌ :

Nabil said,

نَحْنُ الْآنَ فِى فَصْلِ الرَّبِيعِ ، وَهُوَ أَجْمَلُ فُصُولِ الْعَامِ .

" We are now in spring; it is the most beautiful season of the year.

اَلْجَوُّ فِيهِ مُعْتَدِلٌ ، وَالسَّمَاءُ صَافِيَةٌ ،

In spring, the weather is mild, the sky is clear,

وَالطَّبِيعَةُ كَمَا تَرَى جَمِيلَةٌ .

and the nature, as you see, is beautiful.

وَالدُّنْيَا كُلُّهَا فِى فَرَحٍ وَبَهْجَةٍ :

The entire world (lives) in happiness and joy :

اَلطُّيُورُ تُغَرِّدُ عَلَى الْأَشْجَارِ .

The birds sing on the trees.

اَلنَّاسُ يَخْرُجُونَ إِلَى الْحَدَائِقِ ، وَالْمَزَارِعِ ، وَشَوَاطِىءِ الْأَنْهَارِ .

People go out to gardens, fields and river banks.

وَالْبَنَاتُ يَتَنَزَّهْنَ فِى الْحَدَائِقِ الْعَامَّةِ .

Girls walk about in parks.

اَلرَّبِيعُ يُحِبُّهُ النَّاسُ وَيُعْجَبُ بِهِ الشُّعَرَاءُ .

People love spring and poets admire it."

أَحْمَدُ : أَتَحْفَظُ شَيْئاً مِنْ شِعْرِهِمْ ؟

Ahmad : " Do you know by heart some of their poetry ?"

نَبِيلٌ : نَعَمْ ، اِسْتَمِعْ :

Nabil : " Yes, listen :

مَا أَطْيَبَ الْهَوَاءَ   وَالطَّيْرَ وَالْغِنَاءَ !

How pleasent the air, the birds and the singing are !

قُمْ نَمْشِ بَيْنَ الزَّهْرِ   عَلَى ضِفَافِ النَّهْرِ

Let's walk among the flowers on the banks of the river.

أَمَا تَرَى الرَّبِيعَا   وَجَوَّهُ الْبَدِيعَا

Don't you see the spring and (feel) its pleasant weather ?

قَدْ أَوْرَقَتْ أَشْجَارُهُ وَغَرَّدَتْ أَطْيَارُهُ

Its trees have borne leaves and its birds are singing.

إِنَّ الرَّبِيعَ فَصْلُ فِيهِ الْحَيَاةُ تَحْلُو

Spring is a season in which life becomes sweet.

أَيَّامُهُ أَعْيَادُ يُحِبُّهَا الْعِبَادُ

Its days are feasts that people love. "

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. اَلرَّبِيعُ يُحِبُّهُ النَّاسُ .

This is a nominal sentence consisting of a subject and a predicate. The subject is (اَلرَّبِيعُ) and the predicate is (يُحِبُّهُ النَّاسُ).

Note that the predicate is a verbal sentence consisting of the verb (يُحِبُّ) and the subject(اَلنَّاسُ). Note also that this sentence contains the pronoun (اَلْهَاءُ) in the word (يُحِبُّهُ) ; this *pronoun* refers to the subject of the nominal sentence (اَلرَّبِيعُ).

2. اَلصَّدِيقَانِ جَلَسَا فِى حَدِيقَةِ الْبَيْتِ .

This sentence consists of a subject (اَلصَّدِيقَانِ) and a predicate(جَلَسَا). The predicate here is also a verbal sentence consisting of the verb (جَلَسَ) and the subject (أَلِفُ الاثْنَيْنِ) ; this is a dual pronominal suffix referring to the subject of the nominal sentence (الصَّدِيقَانِ) .

3. اَلنَّاسُ يَخْرُجُونَ إِلَى الْحَدَائِقِ .

This sentence consists of a subject (اَلنَّاسُ) and a predicate(يَخْرُجُونَ). The predicate here is also a verbal sentence consisting of the verb (يَخْرُجُ) and the subject (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) ; this is a masculine plural pronominal suffix referring to the subject of the nominal sentence (اَلنَّاسُ).

4. اَلْبَنَاتُ يَتَنَزَّهْنَ فِى الْحَدَائِقِ الْعَامَّةِ .

This sentence consists of a subject (اَلْبَنَاتُ) and a predicate (يَتَنَزَّهْنَ) .

The predicate here is also a verbal sentence consisting of the verb(يَتَنَزَّهْ) and the subject نُونُ النِّسْوَةِ ; this is a feminine plural *pronominal suffix* referring to the subject of the nominal sentence (اَلْبَنَاتُ).

5. اَلطُّيُورُ تُغَرِّدُ عَلَى الأَشْجَارِ .

This sentence consists of a subject (اَلطُّيُورُ) and a predicate(تُغَرِّدُ).The predicate here is also a verbal sentence consisting of a verb(تُغَرِّدُ) and an implicit pronoun (ضَمِيرٌ مُسْتَتِرٌ) acting as subject : (هِيَ) تُغَرِّدُ . This implicit *pronoun*(هِيَ) refers to the subject of the nominal sentence(اَلطُّيُورُ).

Rule :

The predicate may be a verbal sentence. In such a case the verbal sentence must contain a pronoun (explicit ot implicit) that links it to the subject.

EXERCISES

تمرينات

1. Indicate the predicate in each of the following sentences :

(ا) أَحْمَدُ زَارَ صَدِيقَهُ نَبِيلاً .
(ب) أَحْمَدُ أَعْجَبَهُ جَمَالُ الْأَشْجَارِ وَالْأَزْهَارِ .
(جـ) اَلْأَشْجَارُ تَكْتَسِي بِوَرَقِهَا اَلْأَخْضَرِ .
(د) اَلْأَزْهَارُ تَخْتَلِفُ أَلْوَانُهَا .

2. Indicate the subject and the predicate in each of the following sentences. State the kind of the predicate :

(١) اَلسَّمَاءُ صَافِيَةٌ .
(٢) اَلطَّبِيعَةُ جَمِيلَةٌ .
(٣) اَلرَّبِيعُ أَجْمَلُ الْفُصُولِ .
(٤) اَلرَّبِيعُ أَيَّامُهُ أَعْيَادٌ .
(٥) اَلرَّبِيعُ تَحْلُو الْحَيَاةُ فِيهِ .

3. اَلْمَرِيضُ – اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ – اَلصَّدِيقَانِ – اَلشَّمْسُ – اَلْقِطَارُ

Fill in each blank with a suitable subject chosen from the words above :

(١) . . . . . تُشْرِقُ فِي الصَّبَاحِ .
(٢) . . . . . يَرْكَبُهُ الْمُسَافِرُونَ .
(٣) . . . . . يَشْرَبُ الدَّوَاءَ .
(٤) . . . . . يَنْزِلُونَ مِنَ الطَّائِرَةِ .
(٥) . . . . . يَتَنَزَّهَانِ فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ .

4. Complete each of the following sentences with a predicate being a verbal sentence :

(١) اَلْفَلَّاحُ . . . . .

(٢) سَاعِى الْبَرِيدِ . . . . .

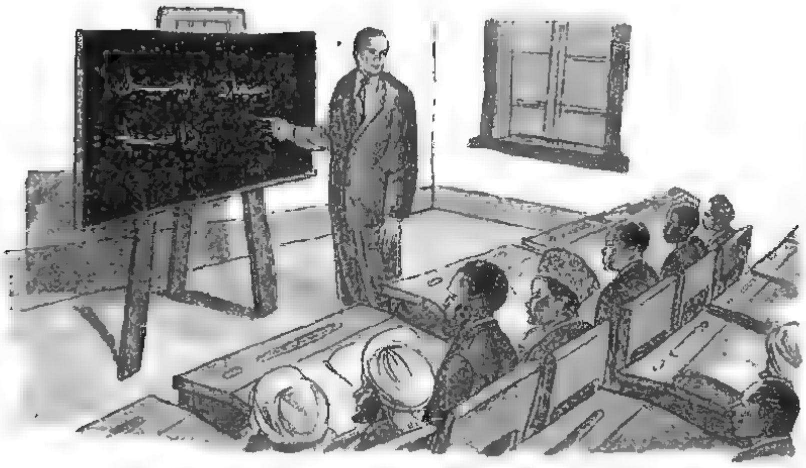
(٣) اَلطَّبِيبُ . . . . .

(٤) اَلْوَالِدَانِ . . . . .

(٥) اَللَّاعِبُونَ . . . . .

اَلدَّرْسُ اَلثَّانِى بَعْدَ الْمِائَةِ

Lesson One Hundred and Two



اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ لُغَةٌ عَالَمِيَّةٌ

Arabic is a World Language

اَللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ مِنَ اللُّغَاتِ الْهَامَّةِ فِى الْعَالَمِ .

The Arabic language is one of the important languages in the world.

أَهْلُ اللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ ، الْعَرَبُ ، يَزِيدُونَ عَلَى مِائَةِ مِلْيُونٍ .

Speakers of Arabic, the Arabs, are over a hundred million people.

اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ يُجِلُّونَ اللُّغَةَ اَلْعَرَبِيَّةَ لُغَةَ الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ .

Moslems venerate Arabic : the language of the Holy Koran.

اَلْإِسْلَامُ نَبِيُّهُ عَرَبِىٌّ ، وَكِتَابُهُ عَرَبِىٌّ .

The prophet of Islam is an Arab, and his Book is in Arabic.

أُوحِيَ الْقُرْآنُ إِلَى رَسُولِ اللهِ مُحَمَّدٍ فِى الْقَرْنِ السَّابِعِ الْمِيلَادِىِّ .

The Koran was revealed to the messenger of God, Muhammad, in the seventh century A. D.

حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ قَرْناً .

The Koran has preserved Arabic for thirteen centuries.

اِنْتَشَرَتِ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ بِانْتِشَارِ الْإِسْلَامِ فِي آسِيَا وَإِفْرِيقِيَّةَ وَأُورُبَّا .

Arabic spread with the spread of Islam in Asia, Africa and Europe.

دَخَلَ الْإِسْلَامُ سُورِيَةَ وَفِلَسْطِينَ وَالْعِرَاقَ ، فَدَانَتِ الْأَرَامِيَّةُ لِلْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

Islam entered Syria, Palestine and Iraq, and so Aramaic gave way to Arabic.

وَدَخَلَ الْإِسْلَامُ مِصْرَ ثُمَّ شَمَالَ إِفْرِيقِيَّةَ ، فَحَلَّتِ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ مَحَلَّ

Islam entered Egypt and then North Africa. Consequently, Arabic replaced

الْقِبْطِيَّةِ فِي مِصْرَ ، وَتَكَلَّمَ الْبَرْبَرُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ إِلَّا قَلِيلاً مِنْهُمْ .

Coptic in Egypt, and the Berbers, except a few of them, spoke Arabic.

حَكَمَ الْعَرَبُ أَسْبَانِيَا ثَمَانِيَةَ قُرُونٍ ، وَحَكَمُوا صِقِلِّيَةَ قَرْنَيْنِ

The Arabs ruled Spain for eight centuries and Sicily for two and a half

وَنِصْفَ قَرْنٍ ، فَسَادَتْ فِيهِمَا الْعَرَبِيَّةُ زَمَناً طَوِيلاً .

centuries, and so Arabic prevailed there for a long time.

وَأَهْلُ مَالْطَةَ يَتَكَلَّمُونَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ مُنْذُ دَخَلَهَا الْعَرَبُ حَتَّى الْيَوْمِ .

The people of Malta have been speaking Arabic since the Arabs went there.

الْعَرَبِيَّةُ أَلْفَاظُهَا وَافِرَةٌ ، وَأَسَالِيبُهَا دَقِيقَةٌ .

Arabic vocabulary is abundant and its syntax is precise.

وَهِيَ تَصْلُحُ لِلْأَدَبِ وَالْعِلْمِ مَعاً .

It is suitable for both literature and science.

فَيَا أَهْلَ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ حَافِظُوا عَلَيْهَا ، وَيَاأَيُّهَا الْمُسْلِمُونَ تَعَلَّمُوا الْعَرَبِيَّةَ .

O ye people of Arabic ! preserve it.

O ye Moslems ! learn Arabic !

GRAMMATICAL NOTES — اَلْمُلَاحَظَاتُ النَّحْوِيَّةُ

1. اَللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ مِنَ اللُّغَاتِ الْهَامَّةِ .

The word (الْعَرَبِيَّةُ) is an adjective qualifying the word (اَللُّغَةُ) ; both are in the nominative case. The word (الْهَامَّةِ) is also an adjective qualifying the word (اللُّغَاتِ) ; both are in the genitive case.

2. (ا) دَخَلَ الْإِسْلَامُ سُورِيَةَ وَفِلَسْطِينَ وَالْعِرَاقَ فَدَانَتِ الْأَرَامِيَّةُ لِلْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

(فِلَسْطِينَ) and (الْعِرَاقَ) are joined to (سُورِيَةَ) by the coordinating conjunction (اَلْوَاوُ) . The sentence beginning with (دَانَتْ) is also *joined* to the sentence beginning with (دَخَلَ) by the coordinating conjunction (اَلْفَاءُ) . (اَلْوَاوُ) indicates simple coordination, while (اَلْفَاءُ) indicates coordination+ immediate sequence.

(ب) دَخَلَ الْإِسْلَامُ مِصْرَ ثُمَّ شَمَالَ إِفْرِيقِيَّةَ .

(ثُمَّ) is a coordinating conjunction that indicates *coordination* + retarded sequence.

3. أُوحِيَ الْقُرْآنُ إِلَى رَسُولِ اللهِ مُحَمَّدٍ .

(مُحَمَّدٍ) is a substitute for (رَسُولِ) ; both are in the genitive case.

4. (ا) حَكَمَ الْعَرَبُ أَسْبَانِيَا ثَمَانِيَةَ قُرُونٍ .

The specification of number (قُرُونٍ) is a plural acting as genitive to

(ثمانية). It is in the genitive case indicated here by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ).

(ب) يَزِيدُونَ عَلَى مِائَةِ مِلْيُونٍ .

The specification of number (مِلْيُونٍ) acts as genitive to (مائَةِ). It is in the genitive case indicated by (اَلْكَسْرَةُ).

(جـ) حَفِظَ الْقُرْآنُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ ثَلاثَةَ عَشَرَ قَرْناً .

The specification of number (قَرْناً) is a singular noun in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ).

5. تَكَلَّمَ الْبَرْبَرُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ إِلَّا قَلِيلاً مِنْهُمْ .

The excepted noun (قَلِيلاً) is in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ); the excepted-from noun is (اَلْبَرْبَرُ). The sentence is affirmative (not negative).

6. (ا) يَا أَهْلَ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

The vocative (أَهْلَ) is in the accusative case indicated here by (اَلْفَتْحَةُ). It stands in the construct with (الْعَرَبِيَّةِ).

(ب) يَـأَيُّهَا الْمُسْلِمُونَ .

The vocative (الْمُسْلِمُونَ) which is a sound masculine plural contains (اَلْوَاوُ). This (اَلْوَاوُ) is the sign of the nominative case of the sound masculine plural.

Note that (أَيُّهَا) intervenes between the vocative particle (يَا) and the vocative (الْمُسْلِمُونَ), the latter being defined by (ال).

7. (ا) اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ يُجِلُّونَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ .

The subject (اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ) is in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلْوَاوُ) . Its predicate is the verbal sentence (يُجِلُّونَ). Note that the waw of the the plural (وَاوُ الْجَمَاعَةِ) in (يُجِلُّونَ) refers to the subject of the nominal sentence (اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ) .

(ب) اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ أَلْفَاظُهَا وَافِرَةٌ .

The subject(اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ) is in the nominative case indicated here by (اَلضَّمَّةُ) . Its predicate is the nominal sentence (أَلْفَاظُهَا وَافِرَةٌ) . Note that the third person feminine singular pronominal suffix (هَا) in (أَلْفَاظُهَا) refers to the subject (اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ) .

EXERCISES تمرينات

1. Indicate the adjective and its case ending in each of the following sentences:

(ا) اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ لُغَةُ الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ .

(ب) أُوحِيَ الْقُرْآنُ إِلَى مُحَمَّدٍ فِي الْقَرْنِ السَّابِعِ الْمِيلَادِيِّ .

(جـ) سَادَتِ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ زَمَناً طَوِيلاً .

(د) لِلْعَرَبِيَّةِ أَلْفَاظٌ وَافِرَةٌ وَأَسَالِيبُ دَقِيقَةٌ .

2. Indicate the substitute and its case ending in each of the following sentences :

(ا) أَهْلُ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ ، الْعَرَبُ ، يَزِيدُونَ عَلَى مِائَةِ مِلْيُونٍ .

(ب) اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ يُجِلُّونَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ ، لُغَةَ الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ .

3. Indicate the predicate sentence and its kind (nominal or verbal) in each of the following sentences :

(ا) اَلْعَرَبُ يَزِيدُونَ عَلَى مِائَةِ مِلْيُونٍ .

(ب) اَلْإِسْلَامُ نَبِيُّهُ عَرَبِيٌّ .

(جـ) أَهْلُ مَالْطَةَ يَتَكَلَّمُونَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ .

(د) اَلْإِسْلَامُ كِتَابُهُ الْقُرْآنُ .

(هـ) اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ أَسَالِيبُهَا دَقِيقَةٌ .

(و) وَهِيَ تَصْلُحُ لِلْأَدَبِ وَالْعِلْمِ .

4. Indicate the pronouns suffixed to nouns and particles in the following sentences :

(ا) اَلْإِسْلَامُ نَبِيُّهُ عَرَبِيٌّ ، وَكِتَابُهُ عَرَبِيٌّ .

(ب) اِنْتَشَرَ الْإِسْلَامُ وَانْتَشَرَتْ مَعَهُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ .

(جـ) دَخَلَ الْإِسْلَامُ مِصْرَ وَشَمَالَ إِفْرِيقِيَّةَ فَسَادَتْ فِيهِمَا الْعَرَبِيَّةُ .

(د) يَتَكَلَّمُ الْبَرْبَرُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ إِلَّا قَلِيلاً مِنْهُمْ .

(هـ) اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ أَلْفَاظُهَا وَافِرَةٌ ، وَأَسَالِيبُهَا دَقِيقَةٌ .

GLOSSARY

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
ا	آخِرٌ	end	٢٨
	آسِيَا	Asia	٧٦
	آلٌ	family	٥٤
	آمِنَةُ (بِنْتُ وَهْبٍ)	Aminah (the daughter of Wahb)	٤٠
	اِبْلَعِي	swallow down (imperative-fem. sing.)	٥٣
	أَبَوَاهُ	his parents	٤٠
	أَبُو طَالِبٍ	Abu - Talib	٤١
	أَتَى بِـ	(workers) brought	٤٨
	اِثْنَيْنِ	two (dual-genitive)	٤٢
	إِجْرَاءَات	regulations	٤٨
	أَجْلَسَ	he seated	٢٠
	أَجْلَسَهُمَا	he seated *them* (dual)	١٨
	أَجْمَلُ	the most beautiful	٦٨
	اِحْتِفَالَاتٌ	celebrations	١٣
	إِحْدَاهُمَا	one of them (dual)	٦٢
	أَحْسِنْ	be good (imperative-masc. sing.)	٥٤
	(لِـ) أُخْتَيْهَا	(to) her two sisters (genitive)	٦١
	اَلْأَخَوَاتُ	the sisters	٦٢
	أَخِيراً	at last	٦٢
	(لَمْ) أَدْخُلْ	I have not been *to*	٢٠
	(مَا) أَدْرَاكَ	(what) shall make thee know?	٤٢
	أَدَوَاتٌ	utensils, equipment	٣٥
	اُذْكُرُوا	remember (imperativ - masc. pl.)	٥٤
	أَذِّنْ	proclaim (imperative-masc. sing.)	٥٤
	اَلْأَذَى	harm	٤٢
	اَلْأَرَامِيَّةُ	Aramaic	٧٦
	إِرْدَبٌّ	irdabb	٣٥
	أُرْزٌ	rice	٣٥
	أَسَالِيبُهَا	its (fem.) syntax	٧٦
	أَسْبَانِيَا	Spain	٧٦
	اِسْتَضَافَ	he played host to	١

Word	Meaning	Page
اِسْتَغْنَى عَنْ	he could do without.	٣٦
اُسْتُقْبِلَ (الرُّكَّابُ)	(the passengers) were received	٤٨
اِسْتَقْبَلَهُمْ	he received them (masc. pl.)	٢٠
اسْتَقْبَلَهُمَا (أَصْدِقَاؤُهُمَا)	(their friends) received them (dual)	٤٩
اِسْتَمِعْ	listen (imperative-masc. sing.)	٦٩
اِسْمَعِي	listen (imperative - fem. sing.)	٦٢
أَسْوَاقٌ	markets	٣٤
إِشَارَةٌ	signal	٤٧
اِشْتَدَّ	it (masc.) increased	٤٢
اِشْتَغَلَ	he worked	٤١
أَشْجَارُهُ	its (masc.) trees	٧٠
أَصْدِقَاؤُهُمْ	their (masc. pl.) friends	٤٩
أَصْدِقَاؤُهُمَا	their (dual) friends	٤٩
أَصْحَابُهُ	his companions	٤٢
أُضِيئَتْ (الأَنْوَارُ)	(the lights) were turned on	٢١
أَطْفَالٌ	children	٣٥
أُطْفِئَتْ (الأَنْوَارُ)	(the lights) were turned off	٢٠
أَطْيَارُهُ	its (masc.) birds	٧٠
أَعْبُدُ	I worship	٥٤
اعْتَرَفَ (الْمِصْرِيُّونَ)	(the Egyptians) recognized	١٣
أَعْجَبَهُ	it (masc.) appealed to him	٦٧
أَعَدَّتْ	she prepared	٣
الأَعْرَافُ	Al - Aaraf	٥٣
أُعْطِيَتْ	it (fem.) was given	٤٧
إِعْلَانٌ	advertisement, trailer	٢١
اعْمَلُوا	work (imperative-masc. pl.)	٥٤
أَعْيَادٌ	feasts	٧٠
اِفْتَحْ	open (imperative-masc. sing.)	٥٤
إِفْرِيقِيَّةُ	Africa	١١
أُفَضِّلُ	I prefer	١٩
أَقَارِبُ	relatives	٤٧

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
١٣	they held	أَقَامُوا	
٤٧	it (fem.) approached	اِقْتَرَبَتْ	
١٣	ancient (masc. pl.-nominative)	أَقْدَمُونَ	
١	divide (imperative masc. sing.)	اِقْسِمْ	
٥٣	hold (imperative-fem. sing.)	أَقْلِعِي	
١٣	(dams) were built	أُقِيمَتْ	
٤٢	more (than)	أَكْثَرُ (مِنْ)	
٢٩	increase (imperative-dual)	أَكْثِرَا	
٧٦	its (fem.) vocabulary	أَلْفَاظُهَا	
٦٨	their colours	أَلْوَانُهَا	
٦٩	don't you ?	أَمَا	
٦١	in front of us	أَمَامَنَا	
٣٦	metres	أَمْتَارٌ	
٦١	affair	أَمْرٌ	
٣٥	she held	أَمْسَكَتْ	
١٢	rains	أَمْطَارٌ	
٥٣	if	إِنْ	
٤٢	verily we	إِنَّا	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٤٢	spread	اِنْتِشَار	
٧٦	it (fem.) spread	اِنْتَشَرَتْ	
٢٧	it (masc.) was revealed	أُنْزِلَ	
٢٧	they (fem.) were revealed	أُنْزِلَتْ	
٤٢	we sent it (masc.) down.	أَنْزَلْنَاهُ	
٢٨	Thou art gracious (to)	أَنْعَمْتَ (عَلَى)	
١١	that it (masc.)	أَنَّهُ	
١٣	rivers	أَنْهَارٌ	
٢٨	guide us	اِهْدِنَا	
٥٣	thy (masc.) people	أَهْلُكَ	
١٣	the most important	أَهَمُّ	
١١	the central parts (of)	أَوَاسِطُ	
٥٤	echo (imperative fem. sing.)	أَوِّبِي	
٧٥	it (masc.) was revealed	أُوحِيَ	
٧٦	Europe	أُورُبَّا	
٧٠	(its trees) have borne leaves	أَوْرَقَتْ	
٦٠	at first	أَوَّلاً	
٢٨	first (fem. sing.)	أُولَى	

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	أَيَّامُهُ	its (masc.) days	٧٠
	اِئْتِنَا	bring us (imperative-masc. sing.)	٥٣
	أَيُّهَا	O ye	٥٤
ب	بَاعَ	he sold	٣٥
	بَاعَتْ	she sold	٣٥
	اَلْبَاقِي	the rest	٣
	بَاقِيَةٌ	remaining (fem.)	١٢
	بِدَايَةٌ	beginning	٤٢
	اَلْبَرْبَرُ	the Berbers	٧٦
	بِرْكَتُنَا	our pond	٦١
	بَطَاطِسُ	potatoes	٣٦
	بَطْنٌ	womb	٤٠
	بَقِيَّةٌ	rest	٢٨
	بَقِيَتْ (السَّمَكَتَانِ)	(the two fish) stayed behind	٦٢
	بَلْدَةٌ	town	٢٧
	بَلَغَ	he reached	٤١
	بَنَاتٌ	girls	٦٩
	بِنْتَاكُمَا	your two daughters	٤
	(لِـ) بِنْتَيِ (الرَّجُلِ)	(to the man's) two daughters	٢
	(مِنْ) بَنِي هَاشِمٍ	(from) Bani Hashem	٤٠
	بِهِ	with it (masc.)	١١
	بَهْجَةٌ	joy	٦٨
	بَيِّنَةٌ	a manifest sign	٥٣
	بَيْنَنَا	among us	١
ت	تَالِيَةٌ	following (fem.)	٣
	تَحْفَظُ (أَنْتَ)	you (masc. sing.) know by heart	٦٩
	تَحْلُو (هِيَ)	it (fem .) becomes sweet	٧٠
	تَحِيَّةٌ	greeting	٤٨
	تَخْتَلِفُ (أَلْوَانُهَا)	(their colours) vary	٦٨
	تَذَاكِرُهُمْ	their (masc.pl.) tickets	٢٠

Page	*Meaning*	*Word*	*Letter*
٦٠	hesitation	تَرَدُّدٌ	
٤١	he married	تَزَوَّجَ	
١٩	to drink (you-dual)	(أَنْ) تَشْرَبَا	
١٩	you (two) drink	تَشْرَبَانِ	
١٢	they (fem.) are witness to	تَشْهَدُ (هِيَ)	
٧٦	it (fem.) is suitable	تَصْلُحُ (هِيَ)	
٥٤	you (masc. pl.) worship	تَعْبُدُونَ	
٥٣	thou didst threaten us (with)	تَعِدُنَا	
٧٦	learn (imperative-masc. pl.)	تَعَلَّمُوا	
٦٩	they sing	تُغَرِّدُ (هِيَ)	
٦٢	they (fem. dual)	تُفَكِّرَانِ	
٦١	your (fem. sing.) thinking	تَفْكِيرُكِ	
٣٤	it (fem.) is held they (fem.) are held	تُقَامُ (هِيَ)	
٢	you (pl.) accept	تَقْبَلُونَ	
٢٨	it (fem.) is read	تُقْرَأُ (هِيَ)	
٦٨	they (fem.) are clad	تَكْتَسِي (هِيَ)	
١٢	they spring	تَنْبُعُ (هِيَ)	
٤١	his grandfather	جَدُّهُ	ج
٤٨	customs	جَمَارِكُ	
٦٧	beauty	جَمَالٌ	
٢	its (fem.) two wings(accusative)	جَنَاحَيْهَا	
٤٨	passports	جَوَازَاتٌ	
٦٩	its (masc.) weather	جَوُّهُ	
٥٣	thou hast come to us	جِئْتَنَا	
٧٦	preserve (imperative-masc.pl.)	حَافِظُوا	ح
٤٠	the Hejaz	اَلْحِجَازُ	
٥٣	the Tradition	اَلْحَدِيثُ	
٦١	their (dual) conversation	حَدِيثُهُمَا	
٤١	Hira' (cave)	حِرَاءٌ	
٣٦	silk	حَرِيرٌ	
٢٠	according to	(بِ) حَسَبِ	
٧٦	it (masc.) has preserved	حَفِظَ	
٥٤	truth	حَقٌّ	
٧٦	it (fem.) replaced	حَلَّتْ	
٣٥	his donkey	حِمَارُهُ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٤٨	carrying	حَمْلٌ	
٣٥	she carried	حَمَلَتْ	
٢٩	orthodox	حَنِيفٌ	
٢٨	where	حَيْثُ	
٢٧	the last (of the prophets)	خَاتَمُ (النَّبِيِّينَ)	خ
١١	eternal	خَالِدٌ	
٤١	Khadijah	خَدِيجَةُ	
٣٥	she went out	خَرَجَتْ	
١٣	fertility	خِصْبٌ	
٥٤	your (masc. sing.) manners (behaviour)	خُلُقُكَ	
٤١	Khuwailid	خُوَيْلِدٌ	
٣	choice	خِيَارٌ	
٥٤	David	دَاوُدُ	د
٧٦	it (fem.) gave way	دَانَتْ	
٣	chickens	دَجَاجَاتٌ	
٤	two chickens	دَجَاجَتَانِ	
٧٦	(the Arabs) went into *it* (fem.)	دَخَلَهَا (الْعَرَبُ)	
٢٠	they walked into	دَخَلُوا	
٤٢	he called	دَعَا	
٢٨	prayer	دُعَاءٌ	
٢٨	he was buried	دُفِنَ	
١٢	Damietta	دِمْيَاطُ	
١٣	(the) world	دُنْيَا	
٤٩	international	دَوْلِيٌّ	
٢٩	your (dual) religion	دِينُكُمَا	
٣٥	maize	ذُرَةٌ	ذ
٦١	sound, logical	رَاجِحٌ	ر
٢١	rest, repose	رَاحَةٌ	
٣٦	satisfied	الرَّاضِي	
١١	tributary	رَافِدٌ	
١١	two tributaries (nominative)	رَافِدَانِ	
٤٩	two passengers (nominative)	رَاكِبَانِ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٤٨	two passengers (accusative or genitive)	رَاكِبَيْنِ	
١٣	wonderful (fem.)	رَائِعَةٌ	
٢	its (fem.) head	رَأْسُهَا	
٢٠	they saw	رَأَوْا	
٣	the master (of the house)	رَبُّ (الْبَيْتِ)	
٥٤	O our Lord !	رَبَّنَا	
٦٠	their (masc.) fortune	رِزْقُهُمْ	
١٢	Rosetta	رَشِيدُ	
٣٦	pound (weight)	رِطْلٌ	
٤١	tending sheep	رَعْيٌ	
٤٧	passengers	رُكَّابٌ	
٤١	Ramadan	رَمَضَانُ	
١٢	tributaries	رَوَافِدُ	
٦٧	he visited	زَارَ	ز
٦٠	his fellow	زَمِيلُهُ	
٦٩	flowers	زَهْرٌ	
٣٥	husband; pair	زَوْجٌ	
٣٥	her husband	زَوْجُهَا	
٣	even (division)	زَوْجِيَّةٌ	
٧٥	seventh	سَابِعٌ	س
٧٦	it (fem.) prevailed	سَادَتْ	
٤٨	(two cars) hurried	سَارَعَتْ (سَيَّارَتَانِ)	
٢	two legs (nominative)	سَاقَانِ	
٢	its (fem.) two legs (accusative)	سَاقَيْهَا	
٥٤	Saba (ancient South Arabian kingdom)	سَبَأٌ	
١٣	dam	سَدٌّ	
١٣	the High Dam	اَلسَّدُّ الْعَالِي	
١٣	dams	سُدُودٌ	
٢٧	he greeted (him)	سَلَّمَ (عَلَيْهِ)	
٤٨	ladder	سُلَّمٌ	
٤٨	it was permitted	سُمِحَ	
٦١	you (dual) have heard	سَمِعْتُمَا	
٦١	fish (pl.)	سَمَكَاتٌ	
٦١	two fish (nominative)	سَمَكَتَانِ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٦٠	its (fem.) fish	سَمَكُهَا	
١	fat (fem.)	سَمِينَةٌ	
٤١	years (genitive)	سِنِينَ	
٦١	easy	سَهْلٌ	
١١	the Subat	اَلسُّوبَاطُ	
٢٧	sura	سُورَةٌ	
٧٦	Syria	سُورِيَةُ	
٤٨	two cars (nominative)	سَيَّارَتَانِ	
٤١	lady	سَيِّدَةٌ	
٤٠	biography	سِيرَةٌ	
١٨	cinema	سِينَمَا	
٤١	his youth	شَبَابُهُ	ش
٢٠	booking-office	شُبَّاكُ التَّذَاكِرِ	
٦٢	their (masc.) nets	شِبَاكُهُمْ	
٦٢	their two nets (accusative)	شَبَكَتَيْهِمَا	
٤٢	peninsula	شِبْهُ جَزِيرَةٍ	

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٦٩	their (masc.) poetry	شِعْرُهُمْ	
٦٩	banks (of rivers)	شَوَاطِئُ	
٥٣	Salih	صَالِحٌ	ص
٦٢	sound, well-founded	صَائِبَةٌ	
١٨	their (masc. dual) friend	صَدِيقُهُمَا	
٢٨	path	صِرَاطٌ	
٦٢	youngest (fem.)	صُغْرَى	
٧٦	Sicily	صِقِلِّيَةُ	
٢٨	prayer	صَلَاةٌ	
٢٧	May God bless and greet him	صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ	
٦٠	two fishermen (nominative)	صَيَّادَانِ	
٦٠	fishermen (nominative)	صَيَّادُونَ	
٢٨	those who err (masc. pl. - genitive)	ضَالِّينَ	ض
٦٩	banks (of rivers)	ضِفَافٌ	
١	guest	ضَيْفٌ	
٦١	its (masc.) way	طَرِيقُهُ	ط

Litere	*Word*	*Meaning*	*Page*
ط	طُولَ الْعَامِ	all the year round	١٣
ظ	ظَرِيفٌ	pleasant	١
ع	عَاقِبَةٌ	consequence	٦٠
	عَاقِبَتُهُ	its (masc.) consequence	٦٢
	عَاصِمٌ	Assem	١٨
	عَالَمِيَّةٌ	international (fem.)	٧٥
	عَامِلُ الْمَقَاعِدِ	the usher	٢٠
	عِبَادٌ	people	٧٠
	عَبْدُ الْمُطَّلِبِ	Abdul-Muttalib	٤٠
	عَجُزُهَا	its (fem.) hind part	٣
	عَجُوزٌ	old	٣
	عَرَبٌ	Arabs	٧٥
	عُرِضَ	it (masc.) was shown	٢١
	عَرْضٌ	attraction (show)	٢٠
	عَرَفَتْ	it (fem.) knew	٦٢
	عِشْرِينَ	twenty (accusative)	٤١
	عَطْبَرَةُ	Atbara	١١

Letter	*Word*	*Mege*	*Page*
	عَظَمَتُهَا	its (fem.) greatness	١٢
	عَقْلُكِ	your (fem. sing.) mind	٦١
	عِلْمٌ	science	٧٦
	(غَضِبَ) عَلَيْهِمْ	(he was angry) with them (masc.)	٢٨
	عُمْرُهُ	his age	٤١
	(اسْتَغْنَى)عَنْهُ	(he dispensed) with it (masc.)	٣٦
غ	غَارٌ	cave	٤١
	غَدًا	tomorrow	٥٤
	غَدِيرٌ	stream	٦١
	غَرَّدَتْ	(the birds) have sung	٧٠
	غِرْيَنٌ	silt	١٢
	غَزِيرَةٌ	heavy (fem.) (heavy rains.)	١٢
ف	(سُورَةُ)الْفَاتِحَةِ	the Preface (the first sura)	٢٨
	فَاطِرٌ	Originator	٥٤
	فَاطِمَةُ	Fatimah	٣٦
	فَتْرَةٌ	period	٢١
	فُتِّشَتْ	(the luggage) was checked	٤٨
	فُحِصَتْ	(the passports) were examined	٤٨

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	فَرَحٌ	happiness	٦٨
	فَرْدِيَّةٌ	odd (division)	٣
	فَرْعٌ	branch	١٢
	فَرْعَيْنِ	two branches (genitive)	١٢
	فَضْلٌ	favours	١٣
	فُلْفُلٌ	pepper	٣٦
	فَنَادِقُ	hotels	٤٩
	فَيَضَانٌ	flood	١٣
	فِيلْمٌ	film	٢١
	فِيهِمَا	in them (dual)	٦٧
ق	قَابَلَهُمْ (الْمُوَظَّفُونَ)	(the officials) met them	٤٨
	قَالُوا	they said	٤
	قَائِلٌ	one who says	٢
	قَائِلِينَ	people who say (sound masc. pl. -accusative)	٢٨
	اَلْقِبْطِيَّةُ	Coptic	٧٦
	قَبِيلَةٌ	tribe	٤٠
	قَدَحٌ	kadah (measure of capacity)	٣٥

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	(سُورَةُ) الْقَدْرِ	(Surah of) Judgement	٤١
	قَدَّمَهَا	he presented it (fem.)	٢
	قَدِيماً	in ancient times	١١
	اَلْقُرْآنُ	the Koran	٢٧
	قُرْبٌ	nearness	١٢
	قَرْنَيْنِ	two centuries (accusative)	٧٥
	قُرُونٌ	centuries	٧٥
	قُرَيْشٌ	Quraish	٤٠
	قِسْمٌ	section	٣٤
	قِسْمَتُكَ	your (masc. sing.) way of dividing	٢
	قِسْمَتِي	my way of dividing	٢
	قَضَوْا	they passed	٤
	قَطَعَ	he cut	٢
	قَفَزَتْ	it (fem.) jumped	٦٢
	قُلْ	say (imperative-masc. sing.)	٥٤
	قُمْ	get up (imperative-masc. sing.)	٦٩
	قَهْوَةٌ	coffee	١٩

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	قَوْمُنَا	our people	٥٤
	قِيلَ	it was said	٥٣
ك	كَافِرُونَ	misbelievers	٥٤
	كُبْرَى	great (fem.)	١٢
	كَبِيرَاتٌ	large (sound fem. pl.)	٦٢
	كَبِيرَانِ	large (masc. dual -nominative)	١١
	كَبِيرَيْنِ	large (masc. dual-genitive)	١٢
	(اَلْقُرْآنُ) الْكَرِيمُ	the Holy (Koran)	٢٧
	كُشِفَتْ	(its sources) were discovered	١١
	اَلْكَعْبَةُ	the ka'bah	٢٨
	كُفَّارٌ	misbelievers	٤٢
	كَفَلَهُ	he took charge of him	٤١
	كَلَامٌ	speech	٢٧
	كُلُّهُ	all of it (masc.)	٤٢
	كُلُّهَا	all of it (fem.)	٦٨
	كَيْلَتَيْنِ	two keilas (accusative) (measure of capacity)	٣٥

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
ل	لِسَانٌ	tongue	٢٩
	لَسْتُنَّ	ye (fem. pl.) are not	٥٤
	لُغَاتٌ	languages	٧٥
	لَكُمَا	for both of you	٣
	لَمَّا	when	٤١
	لَهُمَا	to them (dual)	١٨
	لِي	for me	٣
	لَيْسَ	he is not	٥٣
	لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ	the Night of Judgement	٤١
	لَيْلَتُهُمْ	their evening	٤
م	مَا أَطْيَبَ الْهَوَاءَ	how pleasant the air is !	٦٩
	مَاءَكِ	thy (fem. sing.) water (accusative)	٤٠
	مَاتَ	he died	٤١
	مَاتَتْ	she died	٧٦
	مَالْطَةُ	Malta	٥٣
	اَلْمَبْنَى	the building	٤٨
	مُبِينٌ	clear	٢٩

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	(الصُّوَرُ) الْمُتَحَرِّكَة	cartoons (lit. moving pictures)	٢٠
	مُتَخَلِّفَيْن	delayed (masc. dual-genitive)	٤٨
	مَتِينَة	strong (fem.)	٦٢
	اَلْمَجْرَى	the course (of a river)	١٣
	مَجْهُولَة	unknown (fem.)	١١
	مَحْجُوزَة	reserved (fem.)	٤٧
	مُحَمَّد	Muhammad	٢٧
	مَحَلّ	place	٧٥
	مُخَصَّص لِ	kept for	٤٨
	مُخِيف	frightening	٦١
	مُدَاعِب	playful, *jocular*	١
	اَلْمُرْسَلِين	those who are sent (sound masc. pl.genitive)	٥٣
	مُسَاعِدَيْه	his two assistants (*accusative*)	٤٨
	مُسْتَقْبِلُون	people who wel-come (sound masc. pl. nominative)	٤٨
	مُسْتَقِيم	right	٢٨
	مَسْجِد	mosque	٢٨
	مُسْلِمُون	Moslems (sound masc. pl.) nominative)	٢٨
	مَصَبّ	mouth (of a river)	١٢

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
	مُضْحِك	comic	٢١
	مَطَارَات	airports	٤٩
	مَعاً	together	١٩
	مُعْتَدِل	mild	٦٨
	مَغْضُوب عَلَيْهِم	people (*Thou* art) wroth with	٢٨
	مَكَّة	Mecca	٢٧
	مِلْيُون	million	٧٥
	مَمَرّ	runway	٤٧
	مَمَرَّات	runways	٤٧
	مَنَابِع	sources	١١
	مَنَابِعُه	its (masc.) sources	١١
	اَلْمُنْتَظِرِين	those waiting (sound masc. pl. *accusative*)	٤٨
	مِنْجَل	sickle	٣٦
	مَنْسُوجَات	textiles	٣٥
	مُوَظَّفُو الْجَوَازَات	passport officials	٤٨
	مِيلَادِيّ	A. D.	٧٥

Page	Meaning	Word	Letter
٢٨	prophet	نَبِيّ	ن
٧٥	its (masc.) prophet	نَبِيُّهُ	
٢٧	prophets (sound masc. pl.- genitive)	نَبِيِّينَ	
٢٨	we find	نَجِدُ	
٣٥	we need	نَحْتَاجُ	
٤	we want	نُرِيدُ	
١٩	we spend the evening (night)	نَسْهَرُ	
٢٧	he grew up	نَشَأَ	
١٢	it (fem.) developed	نَشَأَتْ	
٦٢	they (masc. dual) spread	نَشَرَا	
٦٢	their (fem. pl.) advice	نَصَائِحُهُنَّ	
٦١	we think	نُفَكِّرُ	
٢	we accept	نَقْبَلُ	
٦٩	let's walk	(قُمْ) نَمْشِ	
٦٩	river	نَهْرٌ	
٦١	we escape	نَهْرُبُ	
٥٣	Noah	نُوحٌ	
٢٨	he emigrated	هَاجَرَ	هـ
٧٥	important (fem.)	هَامَّةٌ	
٤٧	it (fem.) landed	هَبَطَتْ	
٤٢	Hijrah (Emigration)	هِجْرَةٌ	
٦١	escape	هُرُوبٌ	
٤٧	India	اَلْهِنْدُ	
٥٣	Hûd	هُودٌ	
١٢	the valley	اَلْوَادِي	و
١٣	its (masc.) valley	وَادِيهِ	
٧٦	abundant (fem.)	وَافِرَةٌ	
٤١	revelation	وَحْيٌ	
٦٢	perilous (fem.)	وَخِيمَةٌ	
٦٨	their (the trees') leaves	وَرَقُهَا	
٦٢	the middle (one) (fem.)	اَلْوُسْطَى	
٤٧	arrival	وُصُولٌ	
٤٠	he was born.	وُلِدَ	
٤	your two sons (nominative)	وَلَدَاكُمَا	
٢	the two sons of ... (genitive)	وَلَدَيْ	

Letter	Word	Meaning	Page
ي	يَـأَيُّهَا	O ye !	٧٦
	يَتَّجِهُ	it (masc.) heads	١٢
	يَتَّصِلُ بِ	(it) joins	١١
	يَتَعَبَّدُ	he worships	٤١
	يَتَفَرَّعُ	it (masc.) branches off	١٢
	يَتَكَلَّمُونَ	they (masc.) speak	٧٦
	يَتَنَزَّهْنَ	they (fem.) walk about	٦٩
	يَجِبُ	it is a duty (that)	٦١
	يُجِلُّونَ	they (masc.) venerate	٧٥
	يَجْهَلُونَ	they do not know	١١
	يُحِبُّهُ	(people) love it (masc.)	٦٩
	يُحِبُّهَا	(people) love them	٧٠
	يَحْتَاجُ	he needs	٣٦
	يَخْتَرِقُ	it (masc.) runs through	١٢
	يَخْرُجُونَ	they (masc.) go out	٦٩
	يَدْعُو	(Moslems) implore	٢٨
	يَدُهَا	her hand	٣٥
	يَزِيدُونَ عَلَى	they (masc.) exceed	٧٥
	(لَمْ) يَسْتَوْفِيَا	they (dual) did not carry out in full	٤٨
	يَصُبُّ	it (masc.) flows into	١٢
	(أَنْ) يَصُومُوا	(that) they should fast	٥٤
	يَظُنُّونَ	they think	١١
	يُعْجَبُ بِهِ	(poets) admire it (masc.)	٦٩
	يُقَوِّمُ	it (masc.) straightens	٢٩
	يَلْزَمُ (لِإِبْرَاهِيمَ)	(Ibrahim) needs	٣٦
	يَمْتَازُ	it (masc.) is known for	١٣
	يَنْبُعُ	it (masc.) springs	١١
	يَنْتَظِرُونَ	they (masc.) wait	٤٧
	يَهْدِيكُمَا	it (masc.) guides you (dual)	٢٩

تمت الطباعة بمطابع المركز الإقليمى لتعليم الكبار (أسفك)
سرس الليان ، منوفية ،ج .م .ع
٢٥٠٠ /٢٠٠٤م

إذاعة جمهورية مصر العربية

القاهرة

A R.E. BROADCASTING CORPORATION

CAIRO

ARABIC BY RADIO,	تعليم العربية بالراديو
P.O.B. 325	ص. ب. : ٣٢٥
CAIRO	القاهرة
A. R. E.	جمهورية مصر العربية

SECOND STAGE TEST
(ON BOOK TWO)
إختبار مرحلة ثانية انجليزى

PLEASE WRITE IN BLOCK LETTERS

LISTENER'S FILE NO. ....

LISTENER'S NAME IN ARABIC : ....

LISTENER'S NAME IN ENGLISH : ....

OCCUPATION : ....

ADDRESS : ....

....

....

To be received back in Cairo not later than the end of January, next.

Remark: You are kindly requested to answer the questions on the back page, cut it and send it back to us within the course of two months

Dear Listener,

«Arabic By Radio» wishes you the best of luck in answering the questions contained in this Second Stage Test on Book Two (Parts 1—4).

After answering all the questions on the following pages, you are kindly requested to return the test-paper to us. It should be received here not later than the end of January next, at the following address:

Arabic by Radio
P. O. B. 325
Cairo A. R. E.

Those who gain 50% or more will pass the test and will receive certificates and valuable prizes.

Yours sincerely,
Director General.
Arabic By Radio.

اخْتِبَارُ الْمَرْحَلَةِ الثَّانِيَةِ

(فِي الْكِتَابِ الثَّانِي)

١ – ضَعْ فِي الْمَكَانِ الْخَالِي مِنَ الْجُمَلِ الآتِيَةِ الْكَلِمَةَ الْمُنَاسِبَةَ مِنَ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِي أَمَامَهَا بَيْنَ قَوْسَيْنِ :

Fill in the spaces in the following sentences with suitable words of your own.
Answers : (10 marks)

١ – الْحَدِيقَةُ . . . مَفْتُوحٌ (بَيْتُنَا . بَابُهَا . نَوَافِذُهَا)

٢ – المسافِرُونَ . . . حَقَائِبَهُمْ فِي أَيْدِيهِمْ (يَلْعَبُونَ . يُحِبُّونَ . يَحْمِلُونَ)

٣ – النِّيلُ . . . أَنْهَارِ الدُّنْيَا (أَطْوَلُ . أَقْصَرُ . أَكْبَرُ)

٤ – أُقِيمَتْ عَلَى مَجْرَى النِّيلِ . . . عَظِيمَةٌ (مَنَابِعُ . صُوَرٌ . سُدُودٌ)

٥ – الصَّيَّادُونَ . . . وَاسِعٌ (شِبَاكُهُمْ . رِزْقُهُمْ . نَصَائِحُهُمْ)

Answers : الإجابة :

١ – ______________________

٢ – ______________________

٣ – ______________________

٤ – ______________________

٥ – ______________________

٢ ـ ضَعْ فِى الْمَكَانِ الْخَالِى مِنَ الْجُمَلِ الْآتِيَةِ الْكَلِمَةَ الْمُنَاسِبَةَ مِنَ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِى بِالْمُسْتَطِيل :

Fill in the spaces in the following sentences with a suitable word from the frame below

(10 marks)

راضيا . تَصْلُحُ . مَنَابِعُ . الْمُسْلِمُونَ . عَمُّه

١ ـ كُشِفَتْ . . . النِّيلِ فِى الْمَاضِى .

٢ ـ يَدْعُو . . . اللّٰهَ فِى كُلِّ صَلَاةٍ .

٣ ـ عَادَ الزَّوْجُ مِنَ السُّوقِ . . .

٤ ـ كَفَلَ النَّبِىَّ بَعْدَ مَوْتِ جَدِّه . . . أَبُوطَالِب .

٥ ـ اللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ . . . لِلْأَدَبِ والْعِلْم مَعًا

Answers : الإجابة :

١ ـ ______________________

٢ ـ ______________________

٣ ـ ______________________

٤ ـ ______________________

٥ ـ ______________________

٣ ـ أَكْمِلْ كُلَّ جُمْلَةٍ بِمَا يُنَاسِبُهَا مُسْتَعِينًا بِقِرَاءَةِ الدُّرُوسِ (مِنْ ٩٧ إلى ١٠٠) :

Complete every sentence with the suitable words drawn from Lessons 97 100

(10 marks)

١ ـ مَاتَ أَبُو النَّبِيِّ وَهُوَ فِي بَطْنِ أُمِّهِ . . . .

٢ ـ كَانَتِ الْهِجْرَةُ بِدَايَةَ . . . . فِي شِبْهِ الْجَزِيرَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ .

٣ ـ إِنَّ مَطَارَ الْقَاهِرَةِ . . . . مِنْ . . . . مَطَارَاتِ الْعَالَمِ .

٤ ـ السَّمَكُ فِي النَّهْرِ . . . . وَرِزْقُ الصَّيَّادِينَ . . . .

٥ ـ إِنَّ التَّرَدُّدَ . . . . وَخِيمَةٌ ، وَالْعَاقِلُ لَا . . . .

Answers :

الإجابة :

١ ـ ____________

٢ ـ ____________

٣ ـ ____________

٤ ـ ____________

٥ ـ ____________

٤ ــ امْلَأْ مَكَانَ النُّقَطِ لِتُكَوِّنَ جُمْلَةً صَحِيحَةً عَلَى مِثَالِ الْجُمْلَةِ الَّتِى فِي السَّطْرِ الْأَوَّلِ :

Fill in the spaces in each sentence to form a complete one (Example is given below).

(10 marks)

أَنْتَ عَرَبِيٌّ تَتَكَلَّمُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ .

١ ــ أنا . . . .

٢ ــ نحن . . . .

٣ ــ أَنْتِ . . . .

٤ ــ أَنْتُمَا . . . .

٥ ــ أَنْتُمْ . . . .

٦ ــ هُوَ . . . .

٧ ــ هِيَ . . . .

٨ ــ هُمَا . . . .

٩ ــ هُمْ . . . .

١٠ ــ هُنَّ . . . .

٥ – أَجِبْ عَنِ الْأَسْئِلَةِ الآتِيَةِ ، وَاسْتَعِنْ عَلَى الْإِجَابَةِ بِقِرَاءَةِ الدُّرُوسِ (من ٩٣ إلى ٩٦) :

Answer the following questions whose answers occur in Lessons 93—96.
(10 marks)

١ – مَا أَهَمُّ السُّدُودِ عَلَى مَجْرَى النِّيلِ ؟

٢ – بِمَاذَا يَمْتَازُ وَادِى النِّيلِ ؟

٣ – كَمْ سُورَةً فِى الْقُرْآنِ الْكَرِيمِ ؟

٤ – مَا السُّورَةُ الَّتِى تُقْرَأُ فِى كُلِّ صَلَاةٍ ؟

٥ – أَيْنَ تُقَامُ الْأَسْوَاقُ ؟

Answers : الإجابة :

١ – ______________________________

٢ – ______________________________

٣ – ______________________________

٤ – ______________________________

٥ – ______________________________

٦ ـ اقْرَإِ الْجُمَلَ الآتِيَةَ ، ثُمَّ ضَعْ عَلَامَةَ (✓) أَمَامَ الْجُمَلِ الْمُنَاسِبَةِ الَّتِي تُكَمِّلُ الْمَعْنَى :

Put (✓) opposite the right clause under each sentence (10 marks)

١ ـ أَنَا أَتَكَلَّمُ بِاللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ .
ـ لِأَنِّي مِنَ الْيَابَانِ .
ـ لِأَنِّي عَرَبِيٌّ .
ـ لِأَنِّي إِنْجِلِيزِيٌّ .

٢ ـ أَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْقَرْيَةِ لِأَبِيعَ وَأَشْتَرِي .
ـ لِأَنَّ الْأَسْوَاقَ تُقَامُ فِي الْقُرَى .
ـ لِأَنَّ الْأَسْوَاقَ تُقَامُ فِي الْمُدُنِ .
ـ لِأَنَّ الْأَسْوَاقَ تُقَامُ فِي الشَّوَارِعِ .

٣ ـ نَحْنُ نُحِبُّ الْحَدَائِقَ .
ـ لِأَنَّ بِهَا كُتُبًا نَافِعَةً .
ـ لِأَنَّ بِهَا مَنَازِلَ مُرِيحَةً .
ـ لِأَنَّ بِهَا أَشْجَارًا وَأَزْهَارًا جَمِيلَةً .

٤ ـ أَقَامَ الْمِصْرِيُّونَ لِلنِّيلِ احْتِفَالَاتٍ رَائِعَةً .
ـ لِأَنَّهُ أَطْوَلُ أَنْهَارِ الدُّنْيَا .
ـ لِأَنَّهُمْ عَرَفُوا فَضْلَهُ .
ـ لِأَنَّهُمْ كَشَفُوا مَنَابِعَهُ .

٥ ـ خَرَجَ الْأَصْدِقَاءُ إِلَى السِّينَمَا . ـ لِيُشَاهِدُوا الْحَدَائِقَ الْجَمِيلَةَ
ـ لِيُشَاهِدُوا الصُّوَرَ الْمُتَحَرِّكَةَ . ـ لِيُشَاهِدُوا مَصَانِعَ حُلْوَانَ .

٧ ـ رَتِّبِ الْجُمَلَ الْآتِيَةَ لِتُكَوِّنَ فِقْرَةً مُتَرَابِطَةً صَحِيحَة :

Re-arrange the following sentences to form a coherent sound passage.
(10 marks)

١ ـ فُحِصَتِ الْجَوَازَاتُ ، وَفُتِّشَتِ الْحَقَائِبُ .

٢ ـ سُمِحَ لِلرُّكَّابِ بِالْخُرُوجِ ، فَاسْتَقْبَلَهُمْ أَهْلُهُمْ بِالتَّحِيَّةِ .

٣ ـ وَحَمَلَتْ سَيَّارَةُ الرُّكَّابَ إِلَى مَبْنَى الْمَطَارِ .

٤ ـ وَقَفَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ فِى المَطَارِ ، وَنَزَلَ مِنْهَا الرُّكَّابُ .

٥ ـ وَهُنَاكَ قَابَلَهُمْ مُوَظَّفُو الْجَوَازَاتِ وَالْجَمَارِكِ .

Answers : الإجابة :

١ ـ ______________________

٢ ـ ______________________

٣ ـ ______________________

٤ ـ ______________________

٥ ـ ______________________

٨ ـ اضْبِطْ كُلَّ كَلِمَةٍ تَحْتَهَا خَطٌّ فى الْجُمَلِ الْآتِيَةِ ، وَبَيِّنْ سَبَبَ الضَّبْطِ :

Put the suitable vowel sign on each underlined word and state the cause. (10 marks)

١ ـ ذَهَبَ مَاجِدٌ وَعَاصِم إِلَى صَدِيقِهِمَا نَبِيل .

٢ ـ أَنَا أُفَضِّلُ عَصِير الْفَوَاكِهِ .

٣ ـ إِشْتَرَى أَبِى مِنَ السُّوقِ كِيلَتَيْنِ ذُرَة .

٤ ـ قَلَّمَ الْبُسْتَانِىُّ الشَّجَرَ إِلَّا شَجَرَة الْمِشْمِشِ.

٥ ـ يَا أَحْمَد اذْهَبْ إِلَى الْمَطَارِ.

Answers : الإجابة :

الْكَلِمَةُ مَضْبُوطَة	سَبَبُ الضَّبْطِ
١ ـ عَاصِم ٢ ـ عَصِير ٣ ـ ذُرَة ٤ ـ شَجَرَة ٥ ـ أَحْمَد	

٩ ـ ضَعْ كَلِمَةً مُنَاسِبةً فى الْمكَانِ الْخَالِى مِنْ كلِّ جُمْلَةٍ ، ثُم اضْبِطْهَا مُبيِّنًا سَبَبَ الضَّبْطِ على مِثَالِ السَّطرِ الأَوَّلِ :

Fill in the spaces in the following sentences with a suitable word. Put the suitable vowel sign on each stating the cause. (An example is given below). (10 marks)

السبب	الجملة
لأَنَّهُ خَبرُ الْمُبْتَدإِ	السُّورةُ الأُولَى مِن الْقُرْآنِ سُورةُ الفَاتِحةِ

١ ـ نَشَأَتْ فى وادِى النِّيلِ حضَارةٌ . . .

٢ ـ اسْتَقْبلَ نَبِيلٌ صديقَه. . . فى حُجْرةِ الجُلُوسِ .

٣ ـ اسْتَعْمَلْتُ فى الأَكْلِ المِلْعقَةَ و . . . .

٤ ـ يا . . . الفَاكِهَةِ زِنْ لِى كِيلُو عِنَبًا.

٥ ـ إنَّ . . . . تَمْثِيلُهُ بارِعٌ .

Answers :

الإجابة :

السبب	الكَلِمَةُ مَضْبُوطَة
	١ ـ
	٢ ـ
	٣ ـ
	٤ ـ
	٥ ـ

١٠– إقْرإ القِطْعَةَ الْآتِيَةَ ثُمَّ أَجِبْ عنِ الْأَسْئِلَةِ الَّتِى بعْدَهَا :

Read the following passage and answer the questions below. (10 marks)

فَصْلُ الرَّبِيع أَجْمَلُ فُصُولِ الْعام ، الْجوُّ فِيهِ مُعْتَدِلٌ ، والسَّماءُ صَافِيةٌ ، والدُّنْيَا فى فَرَحٍ وَبَهْجَةِ :

الطُّيُورُ تُغَرِّدُ عَلَى الْأَشْجَارِ ، وَالنَّاسُ يَخْرُجُونَ إِلَى الْحَدَائِقِ وَالْمَزَارِعِ ، وَشَوَاطِىءِ الْأَنْهَارِ ، لِيَتَمَتَّعُوا بِالطَّبِيعَةِ الْجَمِيلَةِ ، وَالْأَزْهَارِ الْمُتَفَتِّحَةِ .

والرَّبِيعُ لِجَمَالِهِ يُحِبُّهُ النَّاسُ ، وَيُعْجَبُ بِهِ الشُّعَرَاءُ .

الأَسْئِلَةُ :

١ – مَا أَجْمَلُ فُصُولِ الْعَامِ ؟

٢ – إِلَى أَيْنَ يَخْرُجُ النَّاسُ فى الرَّبِيعِ ؟

٣ – لِمَاذَا يُحِبُّ النَّاسُ فَصْلَ الرَّبِيعِ ؟

٤ – مَا مَظَاهِرُ فَرَحِ الناس

٥ – اسْتَخْرِجْ مِنَ القِطْعَةِ :

– خَبَرًا لِلْمُبْتَدَإِ .

– فَاعِلاً .

– نَعْتًا وَاضْبِطْهُ .

– نَعْتًا وَاضْبِطْهُ .

– مَجْرُورًا بِحَرْفِ جَرٍّ .

Answers :

الإجابة :

١ – ________________

٢ – ________________

٣ – ________________

٤ – ________________

٥ – خَبَرُ الْمُبْتَدَإِ هُوَ : . . . .

– الْفَاعِلُ هُوَ : . . . .

– النَّعْتُ مَضْبُوطًا هُوَ : . . . .

– الْمَجْرُورُ بِحَرْفِ جَرٍّ هُوَ : . . . .

ARABIC BY RADIO

First Stage lessons are broadcast every Sunday and repeated every Tuesday.

Second Stage lessons are broadcast every Monday and repeated every Wednesday.

Third Stage lessons are broadcast every Thursday and repeated every Saturday.

ARABIC BY RADIO
P. O. BOX 325
CAIRO A.R.E.

WE HOPE TO RECEIVE THIS FORM BACK IN THE COURSE OF TWO MONTHS.

APPLICATION FORM

File no. ....
Occupation ....
Age ....
Name ....
Address ....

! am a listener of Arabic by Radio, stage .... I wish to be promoted to the following stage.

Dear listener,

Prior to your promotion to the following stage, you are kindly requested to answer the following questions, before sending this form back to us.

Please put the mark ✓ opposite the right answer.

Do you listen regularly to our radio lessons?

I listen regularly - Not regularly - Not at all.

If you listen, please mention the wavelength

The wavelength is .. ..

Do you prefer to follow our Course in your native language ? Yes — No

Please mention your native language.

Native language : .. ..

Do you listen to the programme beamed to your area from Radio Cairo in your native language? Please mention the wavelength. Yes—No.

The Wavelength is .. ..

عزيزى المستمع :

الرد على هذا الامتحان اجبارى حتى تحصل على شهادة الانتقال الى المرحلة التالية وحتى يظل اسمك مسجلا لدينا ولتحصل على مطبوعات العربية بالراديو بعد الاجابة نرجو ان ترسله فورا على العنوان التالى :

اذاعة جمهورية مصر العربية

تعليم العربية بالراديو

ص.ب ٣٢٥ ـ ١١٥١١

القاهرة ـ مصر

تمت الطباعة بمطابع المركز الإقليمى لتعليم الكبار (أسفك)
سرس الليان ، منوفية ، ج.م.ع
٢٥٠٠ / ٢٠٠٤م